ALKALINE WATER Co INC Form 424B3 August 19, 2016

> Filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) Registration No. 333-209124

The Alkaline Water Company Inc.

Supplement No. 2 dated August 19, 2016 To the Prospectus dated February 11, 2016

This Supplement No. 2 supplements, and should be read in conjunction with, our prospectus dated February 11, 2016, as supplemented by Prospectus Supplement No. 1 dated February 22, 2016. The purpose of this Supplement No. 2 is to disclose the information set forth in the following reports:

- 1. our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 14, 2016, a copy of which is attached to this Supplement as Appendix A (without exhibits);
- 2. our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 27, 2016, a copy of which is attached to this Supplement as Appendix B (without exhibits); and
- 3. our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarterly period ended June 30, 2016, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on August 15, 2016, a copy of which is attached to this Supplement as Appendix C (without exhibits).

# APPENDIX A

# UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

Washington, D.C. 20549

# **FORM 10-K**

(Mark One)

| [X] ANNUAL | REPORT PURSUANT TO | SECTION 13 OR | 15(d) OF THE | <b>SECURITIES</b> | EXCHANGE A | CT OF |
|------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------------|------------|-------|
|            |                    | 1934          |              |                   |            |       |

| For the fiscal year ended: March 31, 2016  |     |
|--|-----|
| Or   |     |
| [ ] TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE OF 1934 | АСТ |
| For the transition period from to  |     |

# THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC.

Commission file number: **000-55096** 

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Nevada
State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization

<u>99-0367049</u>

(I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)

7730 E Greenway Road, Ste. 203, Scottsdale, AZ 85260

(Address of principal executive offices and Zip Code)

Registrant s telephone number, including area code: (480) 656-2423

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act

Title of Each Class **Nil** 

Name of each Exchange on which registered

N/A

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act

### Common stock with a par value of \$0.001 per share

(Title of Class)

| Indicate by  | check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. |
|--------------|---|
| Yes [ ]      | No [X]  |
| T., 12 4 . 1 | 1. 1  |
| -            | check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the |
| Act.         |   |
| Yes [ ]      | No [X]  |

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days.

Yes [X] No [ ]

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files).

Yes [X] No [ ]

- 2 -

| Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K (§ 229.405 of this        |
|--|
| chapter) is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of registrant s knowledge, in definitive proxy or |
| information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K.         |
|  |
|  |

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of large accelerated filer, accelerated filer and smaller reporting company in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act

| Large accelerated filer [ ]                           | Accelerated filer [ ]                              |
|---|--|
| Non-accelerated filer [ ]                             | Smaller reporting company [X]                      |
| (Do not check if a smaller reporting company)         |  |
| Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a sh | ell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Act). |
| Yes [ ] No [X]  |  |

State the aggregate market value of the voting and non-voting common equity held by non-affiliates computed by reference to the price at which the common equity was last sold, or the average bid and asked price of such common equity, as of the last business day of the registrant s most recently completed second fiscal quarter.

108,754,625 shares of common stock (on a pre-reverse stock split basis) at a price of \$0.098 per share for an aggregate market value of \$10,657,953.

### (APPLICABLE ONLY TO CORPORATE REGISTRANTS)

Indicate the number of shares outstanding of each of the registrant s classes of common stock, as of the latest practicable date:

# As of July13, 2016, there were 15,239,672 shares of common stock outstanding.

#### DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

List hereunder the following documents if incorporated by reference and the Part of the Form 10-K (e.g., Part I, Part II, etc.) into which the document is incorporated: (1) Any annual report to security holders; (2) Any proxy or information statement; and (3) Any prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) or (c) of the Securities Act of 1933. The listed documents should be clearly described for identification purposes (e.g., annual report to security holders for fiscal year ended December 24, 1980).

# **Not Applicable**

- 3 -

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

| PART I  | <u>4</u>  |
|---|-----------|
| ITEM 1. BUSINESS  | <u>4</u>  |
| ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS   | <u>10</u> |
| ITEM 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS                                      | <u>17</u> |
| ITEM 2. PROPERTIES  | <u>17</u> |
| ITEM 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS   | <u>17</u> |
| ITEM 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES   | <u>17</u> |
| <u>PART II</u>  | <u>17</u> |
| ITEM 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDER      | <u>17</u> |
| MATTERS AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES                       |           |
| ITEM 6. SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA   | <u>20</u> |
| ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND | <u>20</u> |
| RESULTS OF OPERATIONS   |           |
| ITEM 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK     | <u>24</u> |
| ITEM 8. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA                     | <u>25</u> |
| ITEM 9. CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND | <u>26</u> |
| <u>FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE</u>   |           |
| ITEM 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES  | <u>26</u> |
| ITEM 9B. OTHER INFORMATION  | <u>27</u> |
|   |           |
| PART III  | <u>27</u> |
| ITEM 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE         | <u>27</u> |
| ITEM 11. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION   | <u>30</u> |
| ITEM 12. SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT | <u>37</u> |
| AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS   | • 0       |
| ITEM 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR   | <u>38</u> |
| <u>INDEPENDENCE</u>   |           |
| ITEM 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTING FEES AND SERVICES                         | <u>40</u> |
| DADE WY   | 40        |
| PART IV   | <u>40</u> |
| ITEM 15. EXHIBITS, FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES                        | <u>43</u> |
| ITEM 16. FORM 10-K SUMMARY  |           |

- 4 -

#### **PART I**

#### **ITEM 1. BUSINESS**

# **Forward-Looking Statements**

This annual report contains forward-looking statements . All statements other than statements of historical fact are forward-looking statements for purposes of federal and state securities laws, including, but not limited to, any projections of earnings, revenue or other financial items; any statements of the plans, strategies and objections of management for future operations; any statements concerning proposed new services or developments; any statements regarding future economic conditions or performance; any statements or belief; and any statements of assumptions underlying any of the foregoing. Forward-looking statements may include the words may, could, estimate, intercontinue, believe, expect or anticipate or other similar words. These forward-looking statements present our estimand assumptions only as of the date of this report. Accordingly, readers are cautioned not to place undue reliance on forward-looking statements, which speak only as of the dates on which they are made. Except as required by applicable law, including the securities laws of the United States, we do not intend, and undertake no obligation, to update any forward-looking statement.

Although we believe the expectations reflected in any of our forward-looking statements are reasonable, actual results could differ materially from those projected or assumed in any of our forward-looking statements. Our future financial condition and results of operations, as well as any forward-looking statements, are subject to change and inherent risks and uncertainties. The factors impacting these risks and uncertainties include, but are not limited to:

our current lack of working capital;

inability to raise additional financing;

the fact that our accounting policies and methods are fundamental to how we report our financial condition and results of operations, and they may require our management to make estimates about matters that are inherently uncertain;

deterioration in general or regional economic conditions;

adverse state or federal legislation or regulation that increases the costs of compliance, or adverse findings by a regulator with respect to existing operations;

inability to efficiently manage our operations;

inability to achieve future sales levels or other operating results; and

the unavailability of funds for capital expenditures.

Our financial statements are stated in United States Dollars (US\$) unless otherwise stated and are prepared in accordance with United States Generally Accepted Accounting Principles.

In this annual report, unless otherwise specified, all references to common shares refer to the common shares in our capital stock.

As used in this annual report on Form 10-K, the terms we, us our, the Company and Alkaline refer to The A Water Company Inc., a Nevada corporation, and its wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline Water Corp., and Alkaline Water Corp. s wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline 88, LLC (formerly Alkaline 84, LLC), unless otherwise specified.

### **Corporate Overview**

Our company offers retail consumers bottled alkaline water in 500ml, 700ml, 1-liter, 3-liter and 1-gallon sizes under the trade name Alkaline88. Our product is produced through an electrolysis process that uses specialized electronic cells coated with a variety of rare earth minerals to produce our 8.8 pH drinking water without the use of any

chemicals. Our product also incorporates 84 trace Himalayan salts. The main reason consumers drink our product is for the perceived benefit that a proper pH balance helps fight disease and boosts the immune system and the perception that alkaline water helps to maintain a proper body pH and keeps cells young and hydrated.

- 5 -

Our company, The Alkaline Water Company Inc., was incorporated under the laws of the State of Nevada on June 6, 2011 under the name Global Lines Inc. . Our business model prior to the acquisition of Alkaline Water Corp. on May 31, 2013 was to provide chauffeuring and transportation services to residents within our local market, primarily providing transportation services such as private school student transport, sightseeing trips, and elderly transportation, and offering transportation to the airport and special events such as proms and weddings. However, as we had not successfully developed our service and had no source of revenue from our business plan, we determined to seek out a new business opportunity to increase value for our stockholders.

On February 20, 2013, The Alkaline Water Company Inc. (formerly Global Lines Inc.) entered into a non-binding letter of intent with Alkaline 88, LLC (formerly Alkaline 84, LLC), a wholly-owned subsidiary of Alkaline Water Corp., for the acquisition of all of the issued and outstanding securities of the capital of Alkaline 88, LLC. Further to this letter of intent, on May 31, 2013, The Alkaline Water Company Inc. entered into a share exchange agreement with Alkaline Water Corp. and all of its stockholders, and as a result of the closing of this agreement on the same date, Alkaline Water Corp. became a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Alkaline Water Company Inc. Consequently, after the closing of this agreement we adopted the business of Alkaline Water Corp. s wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline 88, LLC.

Alkaline Water Corp. was incorporated in the State of Arizona on March 7, 2013, and it is the sole stockholder of Alkaline 88, LLC. Alkaline Water Corp. is the wholly-owned subsidiary of The Alkaline Water Company Inc., and Alkaline 88, LLC is Alkaline Water Corp. s wholly-owned subsidiary.

Prior to the closing of the share exchange agreement, on May 30, 2013, our company effected a name change by merging with its wholly-owned Nevada subsidiary named The Alkaline Water Company Inc. with our company as the surviving corporation under the new name The Alkaline Water Company Inc. In addition, on May 30, 2013, our company effected a 15:1 forward stock split of our authorized and issued and outstanding common stock.

On October 7, 2013, we amended our articles of incorporation to create 100,000,000 shares of preferred stock by filing a Certificate of Amendment to Articles of Incorporation with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada. The preferred stock may be divided into and issued in series, with such designations, rights, qualifications, preferences, limitations and terms as fixed and determined by our board of directors.

On October 8, 2013, we designated 20,000,000 shares of the authorized and unissued preferred stock of our company as Series A Preferred Stock by filing a Certificate of Designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada. At the time, the Series A Preferred Stock had 10 votes per share. The Series A Preferred Stock is not convertible into shares of our common stock.

On November 5, 2013, we designated 1,000 shares of the authorized and unissued preferred stock of our company as 10% Series B Convertible Preferred Stock by filing a Certificate of Designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada. The 10% Series B Convertible Preferred Stock has, among other things, conversion rights, liquidation preferences, dividend rights, redemption rights and conversion rights.

On December 30, 2015, we effected a 50-for-1 reverse stock split of our authorized and issued and outstanding shares of common stock. As a result of the reverse stock split, the number of authorized shares of common stock of our company decreased from 1,125,000,000 to 22,500,000 and the number of issued and outstanding shares of common stock of our company decreased correspondingly. As a result of the reverse stock split, holders of our Series A Preferred Stock had 0.2 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock.

On January 21, 2016, we amended our Articles of Incorporation to increase the number of authorized shares of our common stock from 22,500,000 to 200,000,000 by filing a Certificate of Amendment to Articles of Incorporation with

the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada. As a result, the aggregate number of shares that we have the authority to issue is 300,000,000, of which 200,000,000 shares are common stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share, and 100,000,000 shares are preferred stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share.

On January 22, 2016, we amended the Certificate of Designation for our Series A Preferred Stock by filing an Amendment to Certificate of Designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada. We amended the Certificate of Designation for our Series A Preferred Stock by deleting Section 2.2 of the certificate of designation, which proportionately increases or decreases the number of votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock in the event of any divided or other distribution on our common stock payable in our common stock or a subdivision or consolidation of the outstanding shares of our common stock. Accordingly, holders of Series A Preferred Stock now have 10 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock, instead of 0.2 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock.

- 6 -

On March 30, 2016, we designated 3,000,000 shares of the authorized and unissued preferred stock of our company as Series C Preferred Stock by filing a Certificate of Designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada. Each share of the Series C Preferred Stock will be convertible, without the payment of any additional consideration by the holder and at the option of the holder, into one fully paid and non-assessable share of our common stock at any time after (i) we achieve the consolidated revenue of our company and all of its subsidiaries equal to or greater than \$15,000,000 in any 12 month period, ending on the last day of any quarterly period of our fiscal year; or (ii) a Negotiated Trigger Event, defined as an event upon which the Series C Preferred Stock will be convertible as may be agreed by our company and the holder in writing from time to time.

The principal offices of our company are located at 7730 E Greenway Road, Ste. 203, Scottsdale, AZ 85260. Our telephone number is (480) 656-2423.

# **Operations**

Alkaline 88, LLC, our operating subsidiary, operates primarily as a marketing and distribution company. Alkaline 88, LLC has entered into exclusive arrangements with Water Engineering Solutions LLC, an entity that is controlled and owned by our President, Chief Executive Officer and Director, Steven P. Nickolas, and our Vice-President, Secretary, Treasurer and Director, Richard A. Wright, for the manufacture and production of our alkaline generating electrolysis system machines. Alkaline 88, LLC has entered into one-year agreement(s) with six different bottling companies in Ohio, Georgia, California, Texas and Arizona to act as co-packers for our product. Our current capacity at all plants exceeds \$4,000,000 per month wholesale. Our branding is being coordinated through 602 Design, LLC and our component materials are readily available through multiple vendors. Our principal suppliers are Plastipack Packaging, Polyplastics Co., Van Plastics Inc., Amcor Inc. and Cactus Containers.

Our product is currently at the expansion phase of its lifecycle. In March 2012 Alkaline 88, LLC did market research on the demand for a bulk alkaline product at the Natural Product Expo West in Anaheim, California. In January 2013, we began the formal launching of our product in Southern California and Arizona. Since then, we have begun to deliver product through approximately 25,000 retail outlets throughout the United States. We are presently in all 50 States and the District of Columbia, although over 50% of our current sales are concentrated in the Southwest and Texas. We have distribution agreements with large national distributors (UNFI, KeHe, Tree of Life and Natures Best, CoreMark and C&S), representing over 150,000 retail establishments. Our current stores include convenience stores, natural food products stores, large ethnic markets and national retailers. Currently, we sell all of our products to our retailers through brokers and distributors. Our larger retail clients bring the water in through their own warehouse distribution network. Our current retail clients are made up of a variety of the following; convenience stores, including 7-11 s; large national retailers, including Albertson s/Safeway, Kroger companies, and regional grocery chains such as Schnucks, Smart & Final, Jewel-Osco, Sprouts, Bashas , Bristol Farms, Vallarta, Superior Foods, Brookshire s, HEB and other companies throughout the United States. In total we are now in 36 of the top 75 (by sales) grocery retailers in the United States.

In April 2014 we entered into an exclusive territorial distribution agreement with Kalil Bottling Co. on a new single serve 700ml Bottle with a sport cap. This exclusivity is in Arizona and other areas in the Southwestern United States. Kalil Bottling Co. is a direct to store distributor (DSD). In the past fiscal year we have added a number of additional DSD s in the Southwest and have expanded our product offering to include 500ml and 1 liter bottles.

In order to continue our expansion, we anticipate that we will be required, in most cases, to continue to give promotional deals throughout 2016 and in subsequent years on a quarterly basis ranging from a 5%-20% discount similar to all other beverage company promotional programs. It has been our experience that most of the retailers have requested some type of promotional introductory program which has included either a \$0.25 -\$0.50 per unit discount on an initial order; a buy one get one free program; or a free-fill program which includes 1-2 cases of free product per

store location. Slotting has only been presented and negotiated in the larger national grocery chains and, in most cases, is offset by product sales. Our slotting fees with our current national retailers do not exceed \$600,000 in the aggregate and are offset through product sales. In addition we participate in promotional activities of our distributors, but these fees are not in excess of \$1,100,000 and are offset through product sales.

- 7 -

#### **Plan of Operations**

In order for us to implement our business plan over the next twelve-month period, we have identified the following milestones that we expect to achieve:

- Expansion of Broker Network We expect to continue to develop our working relationship with our national broker network. We continually meet train and go on sales call with our national broker network in order to take advantage of the momentum currently being created by their efforts. We anticipate a considerable amount of travel and ongoing expenses at an estimated cost during that time of \$100,000.
- Increase Manufacturing Capacity We expect to add one or two new co-packer facilities, strategically located to reduce freight costs and meet future growth objectives.
- Expand Retail Distribution We are currently in negotiations or have received the new item paperwork from retailers that will introduce our Alkaline 88 product line to retailers representing approximately 35,000 store locations throughout North America. We believe that by the end of fiscal year 2017, we will be in over 35,000 stores. The cost of this retail expansion is expected to be up to \$1,500,000 during that time.
- Addition of Support Staff In order to support expansion efforts and to continue the training and support of our broker network, we will need to hire approximately two more people on the corporate level, which will be hired for the specific purpose of supporting the broker, distributor and retailers and their logistical requirements. We continue to seek and interview candidates to fill our growing need for additional staffing. The additional cost of these new hires is expected to be approximately \$250,000 in salary and benefits over the next twelve months.
- Capital Considerations Our business plan can be adjusted based on the available capital to the business. We anticipate that approximately \$2,500,000 is necessary in the near term in order to build-out a national presence for our product and to allow for the purchase of the necessary equipment and facilities over the next twelve months. To fund our expansion in the longer term, we anticipate that we need at least \$3,000,000 during fiscal year 2016-2017.

We believe that cash flow from operations will not meet our present and near-term cash needs and thus we will require additional cash resources, including the sale of equity or debt securities, to meet our planned capital expenditures and working capital requirements for the next 12 months. We estimate that our capital needs over the next 12 months will be up to \$3,000,000. We will require additional cash resources to achieve the milestones indicated above. If our own financial resources and future cash-flows from operations are insufficient to satisfy our capital requirements, we may seek to sell additional equity or debt securities or obtain additional credit facilities. The sale of additional equity securities will result in dilution to our stockholders. The incurrence of indebtedness will result in increased debt service obligations and could require us to agree to operating and financial covenants that could restrict our operations or modify our plans to grow the business. Financing may not be available in amounts or on terms acceptable to us, if at all. Any failure by us to raise additional funds on terms favorable to us, or at all, will limit our ability to expand our business operations and could harm our overall business prospects.

#### **Distribution Method for Our Product**

Our distribution network is a broker-distributor-retailer network, whereby brokers represent our products to distributors and retailers. Our target retail markets are: (a) chain and independent health food stores; (b) grocery stores; (c) convenience stores; (d) drug stores; and (e) the mass retail market.

- 8 -

Currently we have gained broker representation through the Beacon United Group of brokers, which extend throughout the United States. Across the country and in all categories of retail trade, we are aggressively utilizing both DSD (direct to store deliveries) and warehouse opportunities in the distribution of our products throughout the country.

We have distribution agreements with large national distributors (UNFI, KeHe, Tree of Life and Natures Best, CoreMark and C&S), representing over 150,000 retail establishments. Our current stores include convenience stores, natural food products stores, large ethnic markets and national retailers. Currently, we sell all of our products to our retailers through brokers and distributors. Our larger retail clients bring the water in through their own warehouse distribution network. Our current retail clients are made up of a variety of the following; convenience stores, including 7-11 s; large national retailers, including Albertson s/Safeway, Kroger companies, and regional grocery chains such as Schnucks, Smart & Final, Jewel-Osco, Sprouts, Bashas, Bristol Farms, Vallarta, Superior Foods, Brookshire, s, HEB and other companies throughout the United States. In total we are now in 36 of the top 75 grocery retailers in the United States.

#### **Dependence on Few Customers**

We have 3 major customers that together account for 57% (24%, 17%, and 15%, respectively) of accounts receivable at March 31, 2016, and 4 customers that together account for 60% (20%, 17%, 12%, and 11%, respectively) of the total revenues earned for the year ended March 31, 2016.

There can be no assurance that such customers will continue to order our products in the same level or at all. A reduction or delay in orders from such customers, including reductions or delays due to market, economic or competitive conditions, could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

#### **Marketing**

We intend to market our product through our broker network and to avail ourselves to the promotional activities of other companies and competitors regarding the benefits of alkaline water. We anticipate that our initial marketing thrust will be to support the retailers and distribution network with point of sales displays and other marketing materials, strategically adding an extensive public relations program and other marketing as the markets dictate.

### Competition

The beverage industry is extremely competitive. The principal areas of competition include pricing, packaging, development of new products and flavors, and marketing campaigns. Our product will be competing directly with a wide range of drinks produced by a relatively large number of manufacturers. Most of these brands have enjoyed broad, well-established national recognition for years, through well-funded ad and other marketing campaigns. In addition, companies manufacturing these products generally have far greater financial, marketing, and distribution resources than we have.

Important factors that will affect our ability to compete successfully include the continued public perception of the benefits of alkaline water, taste and flavor of our product, trade and consumer promotions, the development of new, unique and cutting edge products, attractive and unique packaging, branded product advertising, pricing, and the success of our distribution network.

We will also be competing to secure distributors who will agree to market our product over those of our competitors, provide stable and reliable distribution, and secure adequate shelf space in retail outlets. The extremely competitive pressures within the beverage categories could result in our product never even being introduced beyond what they

can market locally themselves.

- 9 -

Our product will compete generally with all liquid refreshments, including bottled water and numerous specialty beverages, such as SoBe, Snapple, Arizona, Vitamin Water, Gatorade, and Powerade. We will compete directly with other alkaline water producers and brands focused on the emerging alkaline beverage market including Eternal, Essentia, Icelandic, Real Water, Aqua Hydrate, Mountain Valley, Qure, Penta, and Alka Power.

Products offered by our direct competitors are sold in various volumes and prices with prices ranging from approximately \$1.39 for a half-liter bottle to \$2.99 for a one-liter bottle, and volumes ranging from half-liter bottles to one-and-a half liter bottles. We currently offer our product in a three-liter bottle for a suggested retail price (SRP) of \$3.99, one-gallon bottle for an SRP of \$4.99, 700 milliliter single serving at an SRP of \$1.29, 1 liter at an SRP of \$1.79 and a 500 milliliter at an SRP of \$0.99.

#### **Intellectual Property**

Where available, we intend to obtain trademark protection in the United States for a number of trademarks for slogans and product designs. We intend to aggressively assert our rights under trade secret, unfair competition, trademark and copyright laws to protect our intellectual property, including product design, product research and concepts and recognized trademarks. These rights are protected through the acquisition of patents and trademark registrations, the maintenance of trade secrets, the development of trade dress, and, where appropriate, litigation against those who are, in our opinion, infringing these rights. The trademark for Alkaline 88 has been approved and is currently active.

While there can be no assurance that registered trademarks will protect our proprietary information, we intend to assert our intellectual property rights against any infringer. Although any assertion of our rights could result in a substantial cost to, and diversion of effort by, our company, management believes that the protection of our intellectual property rights will be a key component of our sales and operating strategy.

#### **Seasonality of Business**

The sales of our products are influenced to some extent by weather conditions in the markets in which we operate. Unusually cold or rainy weather during the summer months may have a temporary effect on the demand for our product and contribute to lower sales, which could have an adverse effect on our results of operations for such periods.

#### Research and Development Costs During the Last Two Years

Alkaline 88, LLC has worked with Water Engineering Solutions, LLC, an entity that is controlled and majority-owned by Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright, on the research and development activities related to the development of our alkaline generating electrolysis system machines, a proprietary alkaline water system.

### **Government Regulation**

The advertising, distribution, labeling, production, safety, sale, and transportation in the United States of our product will be subject to: the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act; the Federal Trade Commission Act; the Lanham Act; state consumer protection laws; competition laws; federal, state and local workplace health and safety laws; various federal, state and local environmental protection laws; and various other federal, state and local statutes and regulations.

Legal requirements apply in many jurisdictions in the United States requiring that deposits or certain ecotaxes or fees be charged for the sale, marketing, and use of certain non-refillable beverage containers. The precise requirements imposed by these measures vary. Other types of statutes and regulations relating to beverage container deposits, recycling, ecotaxes and/or product stewardship also apply in various jurisdictions in the United States. We anticipate

that additional, similar legal requirements may be proposed or enacted in the future at the local, state and federal levels in the United States.

- 10 -

Any third-party bottling facility that we may choose to utilize in the future and any other such operations will be subject to various environmental protection statutes and regulations, including those relating to the use of water resources and the discharge of wastewater. It will be our policy to comply with any and all such legal requirements. Compliance with these provisions has not had, and we do not expect such compliance to have, any material adverse effect on our capital expenditures, net income or competitive position.

#### **Employees**

In addition to Steven P. Nickolas, who is our President, Chief Executive Officer and Director, and Richard A. Wright, who is our Vice-President, Secretary, Treasurer and Director, we currently employ 11 full time employees and 1 part-time employee in marketing, accounting and administration. We also work with retail brokers in the United States who are paid on a contract basis. Our operations are overseen directly by management that engages our employees to carry on our business. Our management oversees all responsibilities in the areas of corporate administration, business development, and research. We intend to expand our current management to retain skilled directors, officers, and employees with experience relevant to our business focus. Our management s relationships with manufacturers, distillers, development/research companies, bottling concerns, and certain retail customers will provide the foundation through which we expect to grow our business in the future. We believe that the skill-set of our management team will be a primary asset in the development of our brands and trademarks. We also plan to form an independent network of contract sales and regional managers, a promotional support team, and several market segment specialists who will be paid on a variable basis.

#### ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS

An investment in our common stock involves a number of very significant risks. You should carefully consider the following risks and uncertainties in addition to other information in this report in evaluating our company and its business before purchasing our securities. Our business, operating results and financial condition could be seriously harmed as a result of the occurrence of any of the following risks. You could lose all or part of your investment due to any of these risks.

#### **Risks Related to Our Business**

#### Because we have a limited operating history, our ability to fully and successfully develop our business is unknown.

We were incorporated in June 6, 2011, and we have only begun producing and distributing alkaline bottled water in 2013, and we have a limited operating history from which investors can evaluate our business. Our ability to successfully develop our products, and to realize consistent, meaningful revenues and profit has not been established and cannot be assured. For us to achieve success, our products must receive broad market acceptance by consumers. Without this market acceptance, we will not be able to generate sufficient revenue to continue our business operation. If our products are not widely accepted by the market, our business may fail.

Our ability to achieve and maintain profitability and positive cash flow is dependent upon our ability to generate revenues, manage development costs and expenses, and compete successfully with our direct and indirect competitors. We anticipate operating losses in upcoming future periods. This will occur because there are expenses associated with the development, production, marketing, and sales of our product.

Our independent registered public accounting firm has expressed substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern.

Our financial statements are prepared using generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America applicable to a going concern, which contemplates the realization of assets and liquidation of liabilities in the normal course of business. We have not yet established an ongoing source of revenues sufficient to cover our operating costs and to allow us to continue as a going concern. As of March 31, 2016, we had an accumulated deficit of \$19,933,934. Our ability to continue as a going concern is dependent on our company obtaining adequate capital to fund operating losses until we become profitable. If we are unable to obtain adequate capital, we could be forced to significantly curtail or cease operations. In its report on the financial statements for the year ended March 31, 2016, our independent registered public accounting firm included an explanatory paragraph regarding substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern. Our financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

- 11 -

#### We will need additional funds to produce, market, and distribute our product.

We will have to spend additional funds to produce, market and distribute our product. If we cannot raise sufficient capital, we may have to cease operations and you could lose your investment. We will need additional funds to produce our product for distribution to our target market. Even after we have produced our product, we will have to spend substantial funds on distribution, marketing and sales efforts before we will know if we have commercially viable and marketable/sellable products.

### There is no guarantee that sufficient sale levels will be achieved.

There is no guarantee that the expenditure of money on distribution and marketing efforts will translate into sufficient sales to cover our expenses and result in profits. Consequently, there is a risk that you may lose all of your investment.

# Our development, marketing, and sales activities are limited by our size.

Because we are small and do not have much capital, we must limit our product development, marketing, and sales activities. As such we may not be able to complete our production and business development program in a manner that is as thorough as we would like. We may not ever generate sufficient revenues to cover our operating and expansion costs and you may, therefore, lose your entire investment.

# Changes in the non-alcoholic beverage business environment and retail landscape could adversely impact our financial results.

The non-alcoholic beverage business environment is rapidly evolving as a result of, among other things, changes in consumer preferences, including changes based on health and nutrition considerations and obesity concerns; shifting consumer tastes and needs; changes in consumer lifestyles; and competitive product and pricing pressures. In addition, the non-alcoholic beverage retail landscape is very dynamic and constantly evolving, not only in emerging and developing markets, where modern trade is growing at a faster pace than traditional trade outlets, but also in developed markets, where discounters and value stores, as well as the volume of transactions through e-commerce, are growing at a rapid pace. If we are unable to successfully adapt to the rapidly changing environment and retail landscape, our share of sales, volume growth and overall financial results could be negatively affected.

# Intense competition and increasing competition in the commercial beverage market could hurt our business.

The commercial retail beverage industry, and in particular its non-alcoholic beverage segment, is highly competitive. Market participants are of various sizes, with various market shares and geographical reach, some of whom have access to substantially more sources of capital.

We compete generally with all liquid refreshments, including bottled water and numerous specialty beverages, such as: SoBe; Snapple; Arizona; Vitamin Water; Gatorade; and Powerade.

We compete indirectly with major international beverage companies including but not limited to: the Coca-Cola Company; PepsiCo, Inc.; Nestlé; Dr Pepper Snapple Group; Groupe Danone; Kraft Foods Group, Inc.; and Unilever. These companies have established market presence in the United States, and offer a variety of beverages that are substitutes to our product. We face potential direct competition from such companies, because they have the financial resources, and access to manufacturing and distribution channels to rapidly enter the alkaline water market.

- 12 -

We compete directly with other alkaline water producers and brands focused on the emerging alkaline beverage market including: Eternal; Essentia; Icelandic; Real Water; Aqua Hydrate; Mountain Valley; Qure; Penta; and Alka Power. These companies could bolster their position in the alkaline water market through additional expenditure and promotion.

As a result of both direct and indirect competition, our ability to successfully distribute, market and sell our product, and to gain sufficient market share in the United States to realize profits may be limited, greatly diminished, or totally diminished, which may lead to partial or total loss of your investments in our company.

### Alternative non-commercial beverages or processes could hurt our business.

The availability of non-commercial beverages, such as tap water, and machines capable of producing alkaline water at the consumer s home or at store-fronts could hurt our business, market share, and profitability.

# Expansion of the alkaline beverage market or sufficiency of consumer demand in that market for operations to be profitable are not guaranteed.

The alkaline water market is an emerging market and there is no guarantee that this market will expand or that consumer demand will be sufficiently high to allow our company to successfully market, distribute and sell our product, or to successfully compete with current or future competition, all of which may result in total loss of your investment.

# Our growth and profitability depends on the performance of third-parties and our relationship with them.

Our distribution network and its success depend on the performance of third parties. Any non-performance or deficient performance by such parties may undermine our operations, profitability, and result in total loss to your investment. To distribute our product, we use a broker-distributor-retailer network whereby brokers represent our products to distributors and retailers who will in turn sell our product to consumers. The success of this network will depend on the performance of the brokers, distributors and retailers of this network. There is a risk that a broker, distributor, or retailer may refuse to or cease to market or carry our product. There is a risk that the mentioned entities may not adequately perform their functions within the network by, without limitation, failing to distribute to sufficient retailers or positioning our product in localities that may not be receptive to our product. Furthermore, such third-parties financial position or market share may deteriorate, which could adversely affect our distribution, marketing and sale activities. We also need to maintain good commercial relationships with third-party brokers, distributors and retailers so that they will promote and carry our product. Any adverse consequences resulting from the performance of third-parties or our relationship with them could undermine our operations, profitability and may result in total loss of your investment.

# The loss of one or more of our major customers or a decline in demand from one or more of these customers could harm our business.

We have 3 major customers that together account for 57% (24%, 17%, and 15%, respectively) of accounts receivable at March 31, 2016, and 4 customers that together account for 60% (20%, 17%, 12%, and 11%, respectively) of the total revenues earned for the year ended March 31, 2016. There can be no assurance that such customers will continue to order our products in the same level or at all. A reduction or delay in orders from such customers, including reductions or delays due to market, economic or competitive conditions, could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

# Health benefits of alkaline water is not guaranteed or proven, rather it is perceived by consumers.

Health benefits of alkaline water are not guaranteed and have not been proven. There is a consumer perception that drinking alkaline water has beneficial health effects. Consequently, negative changes in consumers perception of the benefits of alkaline water or negative publicity surrounding alkaline water may result in loss of market share or potential market share and hence loss of your investment.

- 13 -

#### Water scarcity and poor quality could negatively impact our production costs and capacity.

Water is the main ingredient in our product. It is also a limited resource, facing unprecedented challenges from overexploitation, increasing pollution, poor management, and climate change. As demand for water continues to increase, as water becomes scarcer, and as the quality of available water deteriorates, we may incur increasing production costs or face capacity constraints that could adversely affect our profitability or net operating revenues in the long run.

# Increase in the cost, disruption of supply or shortage of ingredients, other raw materials or packaging materials could harm our business.

We and our bottlers will use water, 84 trace Himalayan salts, packaging materials for bottles such as plastic and paper products. The prices for these ingredients, other raw materials and packaging materials fluctuate depending on market conditions. Substantial increases in the prices of our or our bottlers—ingredients, other raw materials and packaging materials, to the extent they cannot be recouped through increases in the prices of finished beverage products, would increase our operating costs and could reduce our profitability. Increases in the prices of our finished products resulting from a higher cost of ingredients, other raw materials and packaging materials could affect the affordability of our product and reduce sales.

An increase in the cost, a sustained interruption in the supply, or a shortage of some of these ingredients, other raw materials, or packaging materials and containers that may be caused by a deterioration of our or our bottlers relationships with suppliers; by supplier quality and reliability issues; or by events such as natural disasters, power outages, labor strikes, political uncertainties or governmental instability, or the like, could negatively impact our net revenues and profits.

# Changes in laws and regulations relating to beverage containers and packaging could increase our costs and reduce demand for our products.

We and our bottlers intend to offer our product in nonrefillable, recyclable containers in the United States. Legal requirements have been enacted in various jurisdictions in the United States requiring that deposits or certain ecotaxes or fees be charged for the sale, marketing and use of certain nonrefillable beverage containers. Other proposals relating to beverage container deposits, recycling, ecotax and/or product stewardship have been introduced in various jurisdictions in the United States and overseas, and we anticipate that similar legislation or regulations may be proposed in the future at local, state and federal levels in the United States. Consumers increased concerns and changing attitudes about solid waste streams and environmental responsibility and the related publicity could result in the adoption of such legislation or regulations. If these types of requirements are adopted and implemented on a large scale in the geographical regions in which we operate or intend to operate, they could affect our costs or require changes in our distribution model, which could reduce our net operating revenues or profitability.

# Significant additional labeling or warning requirements or limitations on the availability of our product may inhibit sales of affected products.

Various jurisdictions may seek to adopt significant additional product labeling or warning requirements or limitations on the availability of our product relating to the content or perceived adverse health consequences of our product. If these types of requirements become applicable to our product under current or future environmental or health laws or regulations, they may inhibit sales of our product.

- 14 -

# Unfavorable general economic conditions in the United States could negatively impact our financial performance.

Unfavorable general economic conditions, such as a recession or economic slowdown, in the United States could negatively affect the affordability of, and consumer demand for, our product in the United States. Under difficult economic conditions, consumers may seek to reduce discretionary spending by forgoing purchases of our products or by shifting away from our beverages to lower-priced products offered by other companies, including non-alkaline water. Consumers may also cease purchasing bottled water and consume tap water. Lower consumer demand for our product in the United States could reduce our profitability.

# Adverse weather conditions could reduce the demand for our products.

The sales of our products are influenced to some extent by weather conditions in the markets in which we operate. Unusually cold or rainy weather during the summer months may have a temporary effect on the demand for our product and contribute to lower sales, which could have an adverse effect on our results of operations for such periods.

# Changes in, or failure to comply with, the laws and regulations applicable to our products or our business operations could increase our costs or reduce our net operating revenues.

The advertising, distribution, labeling, production, safety, sale, and transportation in the United States of our product will be subject to: the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act; the Federal Trade Commission Act; the Lanham Act; state consumer protection laws; competition laws; federal, state, and local workplace health and safety laws, such as the Occupational Safety and Health Act; various federal, state and local environmental protection laws; and various other federal, state, and local statutes and regulations. Legal requirements also apply in many jurisdictions in the United States requiring that deposits or certain ecotaxes or fees be charged for the sale, marketing, and use of certain non-refillable beverage containers. The precise requirements imposed by these measures vary. Other types of statutes and regulations relating to beverage container deposits, recycling, ecotaxes and/or product stewardship also apply in various jurisdictions in the United States. We anticipate that additional, similar legal requirements may be proposed or enacted in the future at the local, state and federal levels in the United States. Changes to such laws and regulations could increase our costs or reduce our net operating revenues.

In addition, failure to comply with environmental, health or safety requirements and other applicable laws or regulations could result in the assessment of damages, the imposition of penalties, suspension of production, changes to equipment or processes, or a cessation of operations at our or our bottlers facilities, as well as damage to our image and reputation, all of which could harm our profitability.

# Our products are considered premium and healthy beverages and are being sold at premium prices compared to our competitors; we cannot provide any assurances as to consumers continued market acceptance of our current and future products.

We will compete directly with other alkaline water producers and brands focused on the emerging alkaline beverage market including Eternal, Essentia, Icelandic, Real Water, Aqua Hydrate, Mountain Valley, Qure, Penta, and Alka Power. Products offered by our direct competitors are sold in various volumes and prices with prices ranging from approximately \$1.39 for a half-liter bottle to \$2.99 for a one-liter bottle, and volumes ranging from half-liter bottles to one-and-a half liter bottles. We currently offer our product in a three-liter bottle for an SRP of \$3.99, one-gallon bottle for an SRP of \$4.99, 700 milliliter single serving at an SRP of \$1.29, 1 liter at an SRP of \$1.79 and a 500 milliliter at an SRP of \$.99. Our competitors may introduce larger sizes and offer them at an SRP that is lower than our product. We can provide no assurances that consumers will continue to purchase our product or that they will not prefer to purchase a competitive product.

- 15 -

#### We rely on key executive officers, and their knowledge of our business would be difficult to replace.

We are highly dependent on our two executive officers, Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright. We do not have key person—life insurance policies for any of our officers. The loss of management and industry expertise of any of our key executive officers could result in delays in product development, loss of any future customers and sales and diversion of management resources, which could adversely affect our operating results.

#### Our executive officers are not subject to supervision or review by an independent board or audit committee.

Our board of directors consists of Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright, our executive officers. Accordingly, we do not have any independent directors. Also we do not have an independent audit committee. As a result, the activities of our executive officers are not subject to the review and scrutiny of an independent board of directors or audit committee.

#### **Risk Related to Our Stock**

# Because Steven P. Nickolas controls a large percentage of our voting stock, he has the ability to influence matters affecting our stockholders.

Steven P. Nickolas, our President, Chief Executive Officer and Director, exercises voting and dispositive power with respect to 776,000 shares of our common stock, which are beneficially owned by WiN Investments, LLC and Lifewater Industries, LLC, and owns 10,000,000 shares of our Series A Preferred Stock, which has 10 votes per share upon any matter submitted to our stockholders for a vote. Accordingly, he controls a large percentage of the votes attached to our outstanding voting securities. As a result, he has the ability to influence matters affecting our stockholders, including the election of our directors, the acquisition or disposition of our assets, and the future issuance of our securities. Because he controls such large percentage of votes, investors may find it difficult to replace our management if they disagree with the way our business is being operated. Because the influence by Mr. Nickolas could result in management making decisions that are in the best interest of Mr. Nickolas and not in the best interest of the investors, you may lose some or all of the value of your investment in our common stock.

#### Because we can issue additional shares of common stock, our stockholders may experience dilution in the future.

We are authorized to issue up to 200,000,000 shares of common stock and 100,000,000 shares of preferred stock, of which 15,239,672 shares of common stock are issued and outstanding and 20,000,000 shares of Series A Preferred Stock are issued and outstanding as of July 13, 2016. Our board of directors has the authority to cause us to issue additional shares of common stock and preferred stock, and to determine the rights, preferences and privileges of shares of our preferred stock, without consent of our stockholders. Consequently, the stockholders may experience more dilution in their ownership of our stock in the future.

# Trading on the OTCQB may be volatile and sporadic, which could depress the market price of our common stock and make it difficult for our stockholders to resell their shares.

Our common stock is quoted on the OTCQB operated by the OTC Markets Group. Trading in stock quoted on the OTCQB is often thin and characterized by wide fluctuations in trading prices, due to many factors that may have little to do with our operations or business prospects. This volatility could depress the market price of our common stock for reasons unrelated to operating performance. Moreover, the OTCQB is not a stock exchange, and trading of securities on the OTCQB is often more sporadic than the trading of securities listed on a national securities exchange like the NASDAQ or the NYSE. Accordingly, stockholders may have difficulty reselling any of our shares.

A decline in the price of our common stock could affect our ability to raise further working capital, it may adversely impact our ability to continue operations and we may go out of business.

- 16 -

A prolonged decline in the price of our common stock could result in a reduction in the liquidity of our common stock and a reduction in our ability to raise capital. Because we plan to acquire a significant portion of the funds we need in order to conduct our planned operations through the sale of equity securities, a decline in the price of our common stock could be detrimental to our liquidity and our operations because the decline may cause investors not to choose to invest in our stock. If we are unable to raise the funds we require for all our planned operations, we may be forced to reallocate funds from other planned uses and may suffer a significant negative effect on our business plan and operations, including our ability to develop new products and continue our current operations. As a result, our business may suffer, and not be successful and we may go out of business. We also might not be able to meet our financial obligations if we cannot raise enough funds through the sale of our equity securities and we may be forced to go out of business.

Because we do not intend to pay any cash dividends on our shares of common stock in the near future, our stockholders will not be able to receive a return on their shares unless they sell them.

We intend to retain any future earnings to finance the development and expansion of our business. We do not anticipate paying any cash dividends on our common stock in the near future. The declaration, payment and amount of any future dividends will be made at the discretion of the board of directors, and will depend upon, among other things, the results of operations, cash flows and financial condition, operating and capital requirements, and other factors as the board of directors considers relevant. There is no assurance that future dividends will be paid, and if dividends are paid, there is no assurance with respect to the amount of any such dividend. Unless we pay dividends, our stockholders will not be able to receive a return on their shares unless they sell them.

Our stock is a penny stock. Trading of our stock may be restricted by the SEC s penny stock regulations, which may limit a stockholder s ability to buy and sell our stock.

Our stock is a penny stock. The Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) has adopted Rule 15g-9 which generally defines penny stock to be any equity security that has a market price (as defined in Rule 15g-9) less than \$5.00 per share or an exercise price of less than \$5.00 per share, subject to certain exceptions. Our securities are covered by the penny stock rules, which impose additional sales practice requirements on broker-dealers who sell to persons other than established customers and accredited investors. The term accredited investor refers generally to institutions with assets in excess of \$5,000,000 or individuals with a net worth in excess of \$1,000,000 or annual income exceeding \$200,000 or \$300,000 jointly with their spouse. The penny stock rules require a broker-dealer, prior to a transaction in a penny stock not otherwise exempt from the rules, to deliver a standardized risk disclosure document in a form prepared by the SEC, which provides information about penny stocks and the nature and level of risks in the penny stock market. The broker-dealer also must provide the customer with current bid and offer quotations for the penny stock, the compensation of the broker-dealer and its salesperson in the transaction and monthly account statements showing the market value of each penny stock held in the customer's account. The bid and offer quotations, and the broker-dealer and salesperson compensation information, must be given to the customer orally or in writing prior to effecting the transaction and must be given to the customer in writing before or with the customer s confirmation. In addition, the penny stock rules require that prior to a transaction in a penny stock not otherwise exempt from these rules; the broker-dealer must make a special written determination that the penny stock is a suitable investment for the purchaser and receive the purchaser s written agreement to the transaction. These disclosure requirements may have the effect of reducing the level of trading activity in the secondary market for the stock that is subject to these penny stock rules. Consequently, these penny stock rules may affect the ability of broker-dealers to trade our securities. We believe that the penny stock rules discourage investor interest in and limit the marketability of our common stock.

FINRA sales practice requirements may also limit a stockholder s ability to buy and sell our stock.

In addition to the penny stock rules promulgated by the SEC, the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority ( FINRA ) has adopted rules that require that in recommending an investment to a customer, a broker-dealer must have reasonable grounds for believing that the investment is suitable for that customer. Prior to recommending speculative low priced securities to their non-institutional customers, broker-dealers must make reasonable efforts to obtain information about the customer s financial status, tax status, investment objectives and other information. Under interpretations of these rules, FINRA believes that there is a high probability that speculative low priced securities will not be suitable for at least some customers. FINRA requirements make it more difficult for broker-dealers to recommend that their customers buy our common stock, which may limit your ability to buy and sell our stock.

- 17 -

#### ITEM 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS

Not applicable.

### **ITEM 2. PROPERTIES**

We do not own any real estate or other property used in the operation of our current business. Our principal offices are located at 7730 E Greenway Road Ste. 203, Scottsdale, AZ 85260 with the size of 3,500 square feet. We have recently entered into a new leasing arrangement with rent arrangement with 7730 E Greenway Properties, an unrelated third party, for \$6,000 per month. We believe that the condition of our principal offices is satisfactory, suitable and adequate for our current needs.

#### ITEM 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

We know of no material pending legal proceedings to which our company or any of our subsidiaries is a party or of which any of our properties, or the properties of any of our subsidiaries, is the subject. In addition, we do not know of any such proceedings contemplated by any governmental authorities.

We know of no material proceedings in which any of our directors, officers or affiliates, or any registered or beneficial stockholder is a party adverse to our company or any of our subsidiaries or has a material interest adverse to our company or any of our subsidiaries.

#### ITEM 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES

Not applicable.

#### **PART II**

# ITEM 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES

# **Market Information**

Our common stock is quoted on the OTC Markets Group s OTCQB under the trading symbol WTER. Trading in stocks quoted on the OTCQB is often thin and is characterized by wide fluctuations in trading prices due to many factors that may be unrelated or have little to do with a company s operations or business prospects.

Our common stock became eligible for quotation on the OTC Bulletin Board on July 10, 2012 and became ineligible for quotation on July 17, 2014.

Set forth below are the range of high and low bid quotations for the periods indicated as reported by the OTC Bulletin Board or OTCQB. The market quotations reflect inter-dealer prices, without retail mark-up, mark-down or commissions and may not necessarily represent actual transactions.

- 18 -

| Quarter Ended      | High Bid | Low Bid |
|--------------------|----------|---------|
| March 31, 2016     | \$2.19   | \$0.50  |
| December 31, 2015  | \$5.50   | \$1.30  |
| September 30, 2015 | \$9.00   | \$4.45  |
| June 30, 2015      | \$7.75   | \$3.40  |
| March 31, 2015     | \$7.50   | \$3.00  |
| December 31, 2014  | \$5.75   | \$2.15  |
| September 30, 2014 | \$11.35  | \$4.60  |
| June 30, 2014      | \$21.90  | \$5.00  |

On July 13, 2016, the closing price of our common stock as reported by the OTCQB was \$1.65 per share.

# **Transfer Agent**

Our shares of common stock are issued in registered form. The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock is Island Stock Transfer, located at 15500 Roosevelt Boulevard, Suite 301, Clearwater, Florida 33760.

#### **Holders of Common Stock**

As of July 13, 2016, there were approximately 165 holders of record of our common stock. As of such date, 15,239,672 shares were issued and outstanding.

### **Dividends**

The payment of dividends, if any, in the future, rests within the sole discretion of our board of directors. The payment of dividends will depend upon our earnings, our capital requirements and our financial condition, as well as other relevant factors. We have not declared any cash dividends since our inception and have no present intention of paying any cash dividends on our common stock in the foreseeable future.

There are no restrictions in our articles of incorporation or bylaws that prevent us from declaring dividends. The Nevada Revised Statutes, however, do prohibit us from declaring dividends where, after giving effect to the distribution of the dividend:

- 1. We would not be able to pay our debts as they become due in the usual course of business; or
- 2. Our total assets would be less than the sum of our total liabilities plus the amount that would be needed to satisfy the rights of stockholders who have preferential rights superior to those receiving the distribution.

- 19 -

#### **Securities Authorized for Issuance under Equity Compensation Plans**

The following table summarizes certain information regarding our equity compensation plans as of March 31, 2016.

|  | Number of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants and rights | Weighted-average exercise<br>price of outstanding<br>options, warrants and<br>rights | Number of securities<br>remaining available for<br>future issuance under equity<br>compensation plans<br>(excluding securities<br>reflected in column (a)) |  |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Plan category  | (a)   | (b)  | (c)  |  |  |  |
| Equity<br>compensation<br>plans approved<br>by security<br>holders     | 4,657,040   | \$0.926504   | 1,478,960  |  |  |  |
| Equity<br>compensation<br>plans not<br>approved by<br>security holders | Nil   | N/A  | Nil  |  |  |  |
| Total  | 4,657,040   | \$0.926504   | 1,478,960  |  |  |  |

Effective October 7, 2013, our board of directors adopted and approved the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan. The plan was approved by a majority of our stockholders on October 7, 2013. On October 31, 2014, our board of directors amended the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan to, among other things, increase the number of shares of stock of our company available for the grant of awards under the plan from 20,000,000 shares to 35,000,000 shares. The purpose of the plan is to (a) enable our company and any of our affiliates to attract and retain the types of employees, consultants and directors who will contribute to our company s long range success; (b) provide incentives that align the interests of employees, consultants and directors with those of the stockholders of our company; and (c) promote the success of our company s business. Effective as of December 30, 2015, we effected a 50-for-1 reverse stock split of our authorized and issued and outstanding shares of common stock which decreased the number of shares of stock of our company available for the grant of awards under the plan from 35,000,000 shares to 700,000 shares. Effective as of January 20, 2016, our board of directors amended the plan to increase the number of shares of stock of our company available for the grant of awards under the plan from 700,000 to 7,700,000. The plan enables us to grant awards of a maximum of 7,700,000 shares of our stock and awards that may be granted under the plan includes incentive stock options, non-qualified stock options, stock appreciation rights, restricted awards and performance compensation awards.

#### **Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities**

Except as disclosed below, since the beginning of our fiscal year ended March 31, 2016, we have not sold any equity securities that were not registered under the Securities Act of 1933 that were not previously reported in a quarterly report on Form 10-Q or in a current report on Form 8-K.

As of June 10, 2016, we entered into loan agreements with five lenders, pursuant to which we issued promissory notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$260,000 in exchange for the loan in the amount of \$260,000. The promissory

notes bear interest at the rate of 10% per annum, payable quarterly. Payment of the principal and interest is due and payable on or before June 10, 2017. The lenders have the option to convert the amount due under the promissory notes into shares of our common stock at a conversion price of \$1.00 per share. In issuing these securities, we relied on an exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities Act of 1933 provided by Rule 506 of Regulation D and/or Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933.

Effective July 6, 2016, we issued an aggregate of 425,000 shares of our common stock to three investors in a non-brokered private placement, at a purchase price of \$1.00 per share for gross proceeds of \$425,000. In issuing these securities, we relied on an exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities Act of 1933 provided by Rule 506 of Regulation D and/or Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933.

- 20 -

### Purchases of Equity Securities by the Issuer and Affiliated Purchasers

In connection with the repayment of loans in the aggregate principal amounts of \$1,500,000 (originally from Neil Rogers and Turnstone Capital Inc.) on March 4, 2016, 526,316 shares of our common stock issued to Neil Rogers and held in escrow and 1,500,000 shares of our common stock issued to Turnstone Capital Inc. and held in escrow were cancelled effective as of March 31, 2016.

#### ITEM 6. SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA

Not applicable.

# ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

The following discussion should be read in conjunction with our financial statements and the related notes that appear elsewhere in this annual report. The following discussion contains forward-looking statements that reflect our plans, estimates and beliefs. Our actual results could differ materially from those discussed in the forward looking statements. Factors that could cause or contribute to such differences include those discussed below and elsewhere in this annual report on Form 10-K.

#### Overview

We offer retail consumers bottled alkaline water in 500ml, 700ml, 1-liter, 3-liter and 1-gallon sizes under the trade name Alkaline88. Our product is produced through an electrolysis process that uses specialized electronic cells coated with a variety of rare earth minerals to produce our 8.8 pH drinking water without the use of any chemicals. Our product also incorporates 84 trace Himalayan salts. The main reason consumers drink our product is for the perceived benefit that a proper pH balance helps fight disease and boosts the immune system and the perception that alkaline water helps to maintain a proper body pH and keeps cells young and hydrated.

Our company, The Alkaline Water Company Inc., was incorporated under the laws of the State of Nevada on June 6, 2011 under the name Global Lines Inc. . Our business model prior to the acquisition of Alkaline Water Corp. on May 31, 2013 was to provide chauffeuring and transportation services to residents within our local market, primarily providing transportation services such as private school student transport, sightseeing trips, and elderly transportation, and offering transportation to the airport and special events such as proms and weddings. However, as we had not successfully developed our service and had no source of revenue from our business plan, we determined to seek out a new business opportunity to increase value for our stockholders.

On February 20, 2013, The Alkaline Water Company Inc. (formerly Global Lines Inc.) entered into a non-binding letter of intent with Alkaline 88, LLC (formerly Alkaline 84, LLC), a wholly-owned subsidiary of Alkaline Water Corp., for the acquisition of all of the issued and outstanding securities of the capital of Alkaline 88, LLC. Further to this letter of intent, on May 31, 2013, The Alkaline Water Company Inc. entered into a share exchange agreement with Alkaline Water Corp. and all of its stockholders, and as a result of the closing of this agreement on the same date, Alkaline Water Corp. became a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Alkaline Water Company Inc. Consequently, after the closing of this agreement we adopted the business of Alkaline Water Corp. s wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline 88, LLC.

#### **Going Concern**

Our financial statements are prepared using generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America applicable to a going concern, which contemplates the realization of assets and liquidation of liabilities in the normal course of business. We have not yet established an ongoing source of revenues sufficient to cover our operating costs and to allow us to continue as a going concern. As of March 31, 2016, we had an accumulated deficit of \$19,933,934. Our ability to continue as a going concern is dependent on our company obtaining adequate capital to fund operating losses until we become profitable. If we are unable to obtain adequate capital, we could be forced to significantly curtail or cease operations.

- 21 -

In its report on our financial statements for the year ended March 31, 2016, our independent registered public accounting firm included an explanatory paragraph regarding substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern. Our financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

We will need to raise additional funds to finance continuing operations. However, there are no assurances that we will be successful in raising additional funds. Without sufficient additional financing, it would be unlikely for us to continue as a going concern. Our ability to continue as a going concern is dependent upon our ability to successfully accomplish the plans described in this annual report and eventually secure other sources of financing and attain profitable operations.

# **Results of Operations**

Years Ended March 31, 2016 and March 31, 2015

The following summary of our results of operations should be read in conjunction with our audited consolidated financial statements for the years ended March 31, 2016 and March 31, 2015 which are included herein:

|  | Year Ended |                | Year Ended        |  |
|--|------------|----------------|-------------------|--|
|  |            | March 31, 2016 | March 31, 2015    |  |
| Revenue  | \$         | 7,088,806      | \$<br>3,700,476   |  |
| Cost of goods sold                                     |            | 4,432,459      | 2,532,436         |  |
| Gross profit   |            | 2,656,347      | 1,168,040         |  |
| Net Loss (after operating expenses and other expenses) | \$         | (8,281,584)    | \$<br>(7,139,449) |  |

Revenue and Cost of Goods Sold

We had revenue from sales of our product for the year ended March 31, 2016 of \$7,088,806, as compared to \$3,700,476 for the year ended March 31, 2015, an increase of 92%, generated by sales of our alkaline water. The increase in sales is due to the expanded distribution of our products to additional retailers throughout the country. As of March 31, 2016, the product is now available in all 50 states at over 25,000 retail locations. As of March 31, 2015, the product was available in all 50 states at over 16,000 retail locations. This increase has occurred primarily through the addition of 36 of the top national grocery retailers as customer during the year ended March 31, 2016. We distribute our product through several channels. We sell through large national distributors (UNFI, KeHe, Tree of Life, C&S, Core-Mark and Nature s Best), which together represent over 150,000 retail outlets. We also sell our product directly to retail clients, including convenience stores, natural food products stores, large ethnic markets and national retailers. Some examples of retail clients are, Albertson s, Safeway, Kroger, Schnucks, Smart & Final, Jewel-Osco, Sprouts, Bashas , Stater Bros. Markets, Unified Grocers, Bristol Farms, Vallarta, Superior Foods, Ingles, HEB and Brookshire s.

Cost of goods sold is comprised of production costs, shipping and handling costs. For the year ended March 31, 2016, we had cost of goods sold of \$4,432,459, or 62.5% of net sales, as compared to cost of goods sold of \$2,532,436, or 68.4% of net sales, for the year ended March 31, 2015. The decrease in cost of goods sold as a percentage of net sales compared to the same period last year was due to reduced raw material cost through greater volume purchases from our suppliers.

- 22 -

### Expenses

Our operating expenses for the year ended March 31, 2016 and for the year ended March 31, 2015 are as follows:

|                                     | 7  | Year Ended    |    | Year Ended     |
|-------------------------------------|----|---------------|----|----------------|
|                                     | M  | arch 31, 2016 | M  | larch 31, 2015 |
| Sales and marketing expenses        | \$ | 2,931,870     | \$ | 1,386,671      |
| General and administrative expenses |    | 6,883,287     |    | 6,520,451      |
| Depreciation expenses               |    | 318,328       |    | 175,036        |
| Total operating expenses            | \$ | 10,133,485    | \$ | 8,082,158      |

During the year ended March 31, 2016, our total operating expenses were \$10,133,485, as compared to \$8,082,158 for the year ended March 31, 2015. For the year ended March 31, 2016, the total included \$2,931,870 of sales and marketing expenses and \$6,883,287 of general and administrative expenses, consisting primarily of \$4,551,961 in stock compensation expense and \$550,291 of professional fees. Our stock compensation expense was incurred as a part of our issuance of certain stock options and stock grants to employees and key consultants to develop our business. Although a non-cash expense, the value of such issuances had a material impact on our general and administrative expenses for the year ended March 31, 2016.

For the year ended March 31, 2015, the total included \$1,386,671 of sales and marketing expenses and \$6,520,451 of general and administrative expenses, consisting primarily of approximately \$4,039,291 in stock compensation expense and \$646,244 of professional fees. Our stock compensation expense was incurred as a part of our issuance of certain stock options and stock grants to employees and key consultants to develop our business. Although a non-cash expense, the value of such issuances had a material impact on our general and administrative expenses for the year ended March 31, 2015.

## **Liquidity and Capital Resources**

## Working Capital

|                              | At ] | March 31, 2016 | At | March 31, 2015 |
|------------------------------|------|----------------|----|----------------|
| Current assets               | \$   | 2,549,023      | \$ | 717,341        |
| Current liabilities          |      | 2,153,472      |    | 1,413,331      |
| Working capital (deficiency) | \$   | 395,551        | \$ | (695,990)      |
| Current Assets               |      |                |    |                |

Current assets as of March 31, 2016 and March 31, 2015 primarily relate to \$1,192,119 and \$90,113 in cash, \$911,390 and \$416,373 in accounts receivable and \$434,708 and \$193,355 in inventory, respectively.

## Current Liabilities

Current liabilities as of March 31, 2016 and March 31, 2015 primarily relate to \$847,452 and \$562,499 in accounts payable, revolving financing of \$475,273 and \$242,875, accrued expenses of \$251,613 and \$160,437, notes payable of \$324,368 and \$-0-, current portion of capital leases of \$243,623 and \$209,544 and \$11,143 and \$194,940 in derivative liability, respectively.

- 23 -

#### Cash Flow

Our cash flows for the years ended March 31, 2016 and March 31, 2015 are as follows:

|   | Year<br>Ended<br>March 31, | Year<br>Ended<br>March 31, |
|---|----------------------------|----------------------------|
|   | 2016                       | 2015                       |
| Net Cash used in operating activities                           | \$<br>(3,109,541) \$       | (3,152,781)                |
| Net Cash used in investing activities                           | (344,961)                  | (352,169)                  |
| Net Cash provided by financing activities                       | 4,556,508                  | 3,592,398                  |
| Net increase in cash and cash equivalents  Operating Activities | \$<br>1,102,006 \$         | 87,448                     |

Net cash used in operating activities was \$3,109,541 for the year ended March 31, 2016, as compared to \$3,152,781 used in operating activities for the year ended March 31, 2015.

## **Investing Activities**

Net cash used in investing activities was \$344,961 for the year ended March 31, 2016, as compared to \$352,169 used in investing activities for the year ended March 31, 2015. The net cash used by investing activities was primarily from purchase of production equipment.

## Financing Activities

Net cash provided by financing activities for the year ended March 31, 2016 was \$4,556,508, as compared to \$3,592,398 for the year ended March 31, 2015. The increase of net cash provided by financing activities was mainly attributable to sales of our common stock and exercise of warrants.

## Subsequent Financing Activities

As of June 10, 2016, we entered into loan agreements with five lenders, pursuant to which we issued promissory notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$260,000 in exchange for the loan in the amount of \$260,000. The promissory notes bear interest at the rate of 10% per annum, payable quarterly. Payment of the principal and interest is due and payable on or before June 10, 2017. The lenders have the option to convert the amount due under the promissory notes into shares of our common stock at a conversion price of \$1.00 per share.

Effective July 6, 2016, we issued an aggregate of 425,000 shares of our common stock to three investors at a purchase price of \$1.00 per share for gross proceeds of \$425,000.

## **Cash Requirements**

We believe that cash flow from operations will not meet our present and near-term cash needs and thus we will require additional cash resources, including the sale of equity or debt securities, to meet our planned capital expenditures and working capital requirements for the next 12 months. We estimate that our capital needs over the next 12 months will be up to \$3,000,000. We will require additional cash resources to, among other things, expand broker network, increase manufacturing capacity, expand retail distribution and add support staff. If our own financial resources and future cash-flows from operations are insufficient to satisfy our capital requirements, we may seek to sell additional equity or debt securities or obtain additional credit facilities. The sale of additional equity securities will result in

dilution to our stockholders. The incurrence of indebtedness will result in increased debt service obligations and could require us to agree to operating and financial covenants that could restrict our operations or modify our plans to grow the business. Financing may not be available in amounts or on terms acceptable to us, if at all. Any failure by us to raise additional funds on terms favorable to us, or at all, will limit our ability to expand our business operations and could harm our overall business prospects.

- 24 -

## **Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

We have no off-balance sheet arrangements that have or are reasonably likely to have a current or future effect on our financial condition, changes in financial condition, revenues or expenses, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures or capital resources that is material to our stockholders.

## ITEM 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK

Not applicable.

- 25 -

## ITEM 8. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA

## THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC. CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AS OF MARCH 31, 2016

## **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

|   | Page               |
|---|--------------------|
| REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM | <u>F-1</u>         |
| CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS:                      |                    |
| Consolidated Balance Sheets                             | <u>F-2</u>         |
| Consolidated Statements of Operations                   | <u>F-3</u>         |
| Consolidated Statements of Stockholders Deficit         | <u>F-4</u>         |
| Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows                   | <u>F-5</u>         |
| Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements              | <u>F-6 to F-26</u> |

## REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Board of Directors and Stockholders of The Alkaline Water Company Inc.

We have audited the accompanying balance sheets of The Alkaline Water Company Inc. as of March 31, 2015 and 2016 and the related statements of income, stockholders equity (deficit), and cash flows for each of the years in the two-year period ended March 31, 2016. The Alkaline Water Company Inc. s management is responsible for these financial statements. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. The company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. Our audit included consideration of internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the company s internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of The Alkaline Water Company Inc. as of March 31, 2015 and 2016, and the related statements of income, stockholders equity (deficit), and cash flows for each of the years in the two-year period ended March 31, 2016 in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note 2 to the financial statements, the Company has incurred recurring losses and recurring negative cash flow from operating activities, and has an accumulated deficit which raises substantial doubt about its ability to continue as a going concern. Management s plans concerning these matters are also described in Note 2. The financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

/s/ Seale and Beers, CPAs

Seale and Beers, CPAs Las Vegas, Nevada July 13, 2016

## THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC. CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET

| ASSETS   | Ma | arch 31, 2016     | N  | Iarch 31, 2015 |
|--|----|-------------------|----|----------------|
| Current assets   |    |                   |    |                |
| Cash and cash equivalents  | \$ | 1,192,119         | \$ | 90,113         |
| Accounts receivable  | Ψ  | 911,390           | Ψ  | 416,373        |
| Inventory  |    | 434,708           |    | 193,355        |
| Prepaid expenses   |    | 10,806            |    | 17,500         |
| Tropula expenses   |    | 10,000            |    | 17,500         |
| Total current assets   |    | 2,549,023         |    | 717,341        |
| Fixed assets - net   |    | 1,226,534         |    | 1,199,900      |
| Total assets   | \$ | 3,775,557         | \$ | 1,917,241      |
| LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT  |    |                   |    |                |
| Current liabilities  |    |                   |    |                |
| Accounts payable   | \$ | 847,452           | \$ | 562,499        |
| Accounts payable - related parties   |    | -                 |    | 43,036         |
| Accrued expenses   |    | 251,613           |    | 160,437        |
| Revolving financing  |    | 475,273           |    | 242,875        |
| Current portion of capital leases  |    | 243,623           |    | 209,544        |
| Note payable, net of debt discount   |    | 283,120           |    | -              |
| Note payable with original issue discount, net of debt discount  |    | 41,248            |    | -              |
| Derivative liability   |    | 11,143            |    | 194,940        |
| Total current liabilities  |    | 2,153,472         |    | 1,413,331      |
| Long-term Liabilities  |    |                   |    |                |
| Capitalized leases   |    | 95,204            |    | 233,770        |
| Cupitalized louises  |    | 70,201            |    | 255,776        |
| Total long-term liabilities  |    | 95,204            |    | 233,770        |
| Total long term into miles   |    | <i>&gt;</i> 0,20. |    | 200,770        |
| Total liabilities  | \$ | 2,248,676         | \$ | 1,647,101      |
| Stockholders' deficit  |    |                   |    |                |
| Preferred stock, \$0.001 par value, 100,000,000 shares authorized, Series A issued 20,000,000, Series C issued 3,000,000   |    | 23,000            |    | 20,000         |
| Common stock, Class A - \$0.001 par value, 22,500,000 shares authorized 14,568,970 and 2,489,916 shares issued and outstanding at March 31, 2016 and 31, 2016 | ch | 14,568            |    | 2,490          |
| 31, 2015, respectively   |    | 21 422 247        |    | 11 000 000     |
| Additional paid in capital   |    | 21,423,247        |    | 11,900,000     |
| Accumulated deficit  |    | (19,933,934)      |    | (11,652,350)   |
| Total stockholders' deficit  |    | 1,526,881         |    | 270,140        |

Total liabilities and stockholders' deficit

\$ 3,775,557 \$

1,917,241

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these condensed consolidated financial statements.

## THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC. CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF OPERATIONS

|  | For the Year Ended |                     |            |                |
|--|--------------------|---------------------|------------|----------------|
|  | M                  | arch 31, 2016       |            | March 31, 2015 |
| Revenue  | \$                 | 7,088,806           | \$         | 3,700,476      |
| Cost of Goods Sold                                 |                    | 4,432,459           |            | 2,532,436      |
| Gross Profit                                       |                    | 2,656,347           |            | 1,168,040      |
| Operating expenses                                 |                    |                     |            |                |
| Sales and marketing expenses                       |                    | 2,931,870           |            | 1,386,671      |
| General and administrative                         |                    | 6,883,287           |            | 6,520,451      |
| Depreciation                                       |                    | 318,328             |            | 175,036        |
| Total operating expenses                           |                    | 10,133,485          |            | 8,082,158      |
| Total operating loss                               |                    | (7,477,138)         |            | (6,914,118)    |
| Other income (expense)                             |                    |                     |            |                |
| Interest income                                    |                    | 97                  |            | 11             |
| Interest expense                                   |                    | (350,053)           |            | (137,056)      |
| Amortization of debt discount and accretion        |                    | (498,458)           |            | (414,381)      |
| Change in derivative liability                     |                    | 43,968              |            | 326,095        |
| Total other income (expense)                       |                    | (804,446)           |            | (225,331)      |
| Net loss   | \$                 | (8,281,584)         | \$         | (7,139,449)    |
| EARNINGS PER SHARE (Basic)                         | \$                 | (2.19)              | \$         | (3.19)         |
| WEIGHTED AVERAGE SHARES OUTSTANDING (Basic         | :)                 | 3,772,941           |            | 2,234,096      |
| The accompanying notes are an integral part of the | se con             | densed consolidated | d financia | al statements. |

# THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT FOR THE YEARS ENDED MARCH 31, 2016 AND MARCH 31, 2015

|  | Preferr    |              | Comm      |             | Additional      | Deficit         |              |
|--|------------|--------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| D 1  | Number     | ar Value     | Number    | ar Value    | Paid-in Capital |                 | Total        |
| Balance,<br>March 31,<br>2014  | 20,000,000 | \$<br>20,000 | 1,632,044 | \$<br>1,632 | \$ 4,139,434    | \$ (4,512,901)  | \$ (351,835) |
| Value of<br>warrants<br>issued with<br>capital<br>lease<br>agreement |            |              |           |             | 309,029         |                 | 309,029      |
| Shares<br>issued for<br>cash<br>private<br>placement                 |            |              | 346,667   | 347         | 2,359,629       |                 | 2,359,976    |
| Shares issued to contractors   |            |              | 130,050   | 130         | 945,993         |                 | 946,123      |
| Shares issued to employees   |            |              | 71,000    | 71          | 355,284         |                 | 355,355      |
| Warrant exercises  |            |              | 290,585   | 291         | 1,453,513       |                 | 1,453,804    |
| Stock<br>Options<br>issued to<br>employees                           |            |              |           |             | 2,428,782       |                 | 2,428,782    |
| Option exercises   |            |              | 3,640     | 4           | 1,816           |                 | 1,820        |
| Fees paid<br>on stock<br>issuances                                   |            |              |           |             | (346,295        | )               | (346,295)    |
| Shares<br>issued with<br>conversion<br>Preferred<br>Series B         |            |              | 15,931    | 16          | 252,814         |                 | 252,830      |
| Net (loss)   |            |              |           |             |                 | (7,139,449)     | (7,139,449)  |
| Balance,<br>March 31,<br>2015  | 20,000,000 | \$<br>20,000 | 2,489,917 | \$<br>2,491 | \$ 11,899,999   | \$ (11,652,350) | 270,140      |
| Value of<br>warrants<br>issued with<br>capital                       |            |              |           |             | 78,031          |                 | 78,031       |

Edgar Filing: ALKALINE WATER Co INC - Form 424B3

| lease<br>agreement  |            |    |        |            |    |           |               |  |
|---|------------|----|--------|------------|----|-----------|---------------|--|
| Shares<br>issued for<br>cash<br>private<br>placement      |            |    |        | 9,223,200  |    | 9,222     | 3,731,042     | 3,740,264  |
| Shares<br>issued in<br>connection<br>with note<br>payable |            |    |        | 871,246    |    | 871       | 1,053,279     | 1,054,150  |
| Shares issued to contractors                              |            |    |        | 1,600,000  |    | 1,600     | 2,124,541     | 2,126,141  |
| Shares issued to employees                                |            |    |        | 129,000    |    | 129       | 168,065       | 168,194  |
| Warrant exercises   |            |    |        | 255,607    |    | 255       | 127,090       | 127,345  |
| Stock<br>Options<br>issued to<br>employees                |            |    |        |            |    |           | 2,241,200     | 2,241,200  |
| Preferred<br>Stock<br>issued to<br>directos               | 3,000,000  |    | 3,000  |            |    |           |               | 3,000  |
| Net (loss)<br>Balance,<br>March 31,<br>2016               | 23,000,000 | \$ | 23,000 | 14,568,970 | \$ | 14,568 \$ | 21,423,247 \$ | (8,281,584) (8,281,584)<br>(19,933,934) \$ 1,526,881 |
|   |            | ~  |        |            | ~  |           |               |  |

See Accompanying Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.

# THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC. CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS (unaudited)

|  | For the Year Ended |   |  |  |
|--|--------------------|---|--|--|
|  | March 31, 2016     | March 31, 2015                          |  |  |
| CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES               | ,                  | ·                                       |  |  |
| Net loss   | \$ (8,281,584)     | \$ (7,139,449)                          |  |  |
|  | , ,                | , |  |  |
| Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used | in                 |   |  |  |
| operating  |                    |   |  |  |
| Bad Debt Expense                                   | -                  | 6,225                                   |  |  |
| Depreciation expense                               | 318,328            | 175,036                                 |  |  |
| Stock compensation expense                         | 4,551,961          | 3,730,263                               |  |  |
| Amortization of debt discount and accretion        | 639,524            | 457,518                                 |  |  |
| Interest expense relating to amortization of       | 102,781            | -                                       |  |  |
| capital lease discount                             |                    |   |  |  |
| Change in derivative liabilities                   | (43,968)           | (326,095)                               |  |  |
| Changes in operating assets and liabilities:       |                    |   |  |  |
| Accounts receivable                                | (495,017)          | (256,194)                               |  |  |
| Inventory  | (241,353)          | (135,390)                               |  |  |
| Prepaid expenses and other current assets          | 6,694              | (17,500)                                |  |  |
| Accounts payable                                   | 284,953            | 244,165                                 |  |  |
| Accounts payable - related party                   | (43,036)           | 24,633                                  |  |  |
| Accrued expenses                                   | 91,176             | 103,836                                 |  |  |
| Accrued interest                                   | -                  | (19,829)                                |  |  |
|  |                    |   |  |  |
|  |                    |   |  |  |
| NET CASH USED IN OPERATING                         | (3,109,541)        | (3,152,781)                             |  |  |
| ACTIVITIES   |                    |   |  |  |
|  |                    |   |  |  |
| CASH FLOWS FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES               |                    |   |  |  |
| Purchase of fixed assets                           | (344,961)          | (352,169)                               |  |  |
|  |                    |   |  |  |
|  |                    |   |  |  |
| CASH USED IN INVESTING ACTIVITIES                  | (344,961)          | (352,169)                               |  |  |
|  |                    |   |  |  |
| CASH FLOWS FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES               |                    |   |  |  |
| Proceeds from notes payable                        | 2,075,000          | -                                       |  |  |
| Proceeds from convertible note payable             | 435,000            | -                                       |  |  |
| Proceeds from revolving financing                  | 232,398            | 159,527                                 |  |  |
| Proceeds from sale of common stock, net            | 3,751,200          | 2,361,999                               |  |  |
| Proceeds for the exercise of warrants, net         | -                  | 1,344,630                               |  |  |
| Repayment of notes payable                         | (1,729,821)        | -                                       |  |  |
| Repayment of capital lease                         | (207,269)          | (26,588)                                |  |  |
| Repayment of rdeemable preferred shares            | -                  | (247,170)                               |  |  |
|  |                    |   |  |  |
|  |                    |   |  |  |
| CASH PROVIDED BY FINANCING                         | 4,556,508          | 3,592,398                               |  |  |
| ACTIVITIES   |                    |   |  |  |

Edgar Filing: ALKALINE WATER Co INC - Form 424B3

| NET CHANGE IN CASH                                   |         | 1,102,006          |             | 87,448     |
|--|---------|--------------------|-------------|------------|
|  |         |                    |             | ·          |
| CASH AT BEGINNING OF PERIOD                          |         | 90,113             |             | 2,665      |
|  |         |                    |             |            |
| CASH AT END OF PERIOD                                | \$      | 1,192,119          | \$          | 90,113     |
|  |         |                    |             |            |
| INTEREST PAID  | \$      | 152,557            | \$          | 46,070     |
|  |         |                    |             |            |
| Preferred stock conversion to common stock           |         | -                  |             | 252,830    |
| Deferred discount on conversion of preferred stock   |         | -                  |             | 56,098     |
| Fair value of derivative liability at issuance of    |         | -                  |             | 389,710    |
| warrants   |         |                    |             |            |
| Fair value of derivative liability at exercise of    |         | -                  |             | 150,566    |
| warrants   |         |                    |             |            |
| Exercise of stock options with accounts payable      |         | -                  |             | 1,820      |
| Capitalized lease                                    |         | -                  |             | 735,781    |
| Warrant issued for deferred financing cost           |         | -                  |             | 309,028    |
| The accompanying notes are an integral part of these | e conde | ensed consolidated | financial s | tatements. |

# THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC. NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS NOTE 1 SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

## Basis of presentation

The audited consolidated financial statements included herein, presented in accordance with United States generally accepted accounting principles and stated in U.S. dollars, have been prepared by the Company, pursuant to the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission. Certain information and footnote disclosures normally included in financial statements prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles have been condensed or omitted pursuant to such rules and regulations, although the Company believes that the disclosures are adequate to make the information presented not misleading.

These statements reflect all adjustments, consisting of normal recurring adjustments, which in the opinion of management, are necessary for fair presentation of the information contained therein.

## Principles of consolidation

The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of The Alkaline Water Company Inc. (a Nevada Corporation), Alkaline Water Corp. (an Arizona Corporation) and Alkaline 88, LLC (an Arizona Limited Liability Company).

All significant intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated. The Alkaline Water Company Inc. (a Nevada Corporation), Alkaline Water Corp. (an Arizona Corporation) and Alkaline 88, LLC (an Arizona Limited Liability Company) will be collectively referred herein to as the Company. Any reference herein to The Alkaline Water Company Inc., the Company, we, our or us is intended to mean The Alkaline Water Company Inc., includes subsidiaries indicated above, unless otherwise indicated.

## Reverse split

Effective December 30, 2015, the Company effected a fifty for one reverse stock split of its authorized and issued and outstanding shares of common stock. As a result, the authorized common stock has decreased from 1,125,000,000 shares of common stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share, to 22,500,000 shares of common stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share. All shares and per share amounts have been retroactively restated to reflect such split.

On January 21, 2016, stockholders of our company approved, by written consents, an amendment to the articles of incorporation of our company to increase the number of authorized shares of our common stock from 22,500,000 to 200,000,000.

The Company received written consents representing 20,776,000 votes from the holders of shares of its common stock and our Series A Preferred Stock voting as a single class, representing approximately 61% of the voting power of its outstanding common stock and its outstanding Series A Preferred Stock voting as a single class as of the record date (January 12, 2016). On January 21, 2016, there were no written consents received by the Company representing a vote against, abstention or broker non-vote with respect to the proposal.

Our authorized preferred stock was not affected by the reverse stock split and continues to be 100,000,000 shares of preferred stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share. In addition, the number of issued and outstanding shares of Series A Preferred Stock continues to be 20,000,000. However, holders of Series A Preferred Stock had 0.2 vote per share of Series A Preferred Stock, instead of 10 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock, as a result of the reverse stock split.

On January 22, 2016, the Company amended the certificate of designation for our Series A Preferred Stock by filing an amendment to certificate of designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada. The Company amended the certificate of designation for our Series A Preferred Stock by deleting Section 2.2 of the certificate of designation, which proportionately increases or decreases the number of votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock in the event of any dividend or other distribution on our common stock payable in its common stock or a subdivision or consolidation of the outstanding shares of its common stock. Accordingly, holders of Series A Preferred Stock will have 10 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock, instead of 0.2 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock.

## Use of estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ significantly from those estimates.

## Cash and cash equivalents

The Company considers all highly liquid instruments with an original maturity of three months or less to be considered cash equivalents. The carrying value of these investments approximates fair value. The Company had \$1,192,119 and \$90,113 in cash and cash equivalents at March 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

## Accounts receivable and allowance for doubtful accounts

The Company generally does not require collateral, and the majority of its trade receivables are unsecured. The carrying amount for accounts receivable approximates fair value.

Accounts receivable consisted of the following as of March 31, 2016 and 2015:

|                                       | <u>2016</u>      | <u>2015</u> |
|---------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|
| Trade receivables                     | \$<br>911,390 \$ | 426,862     |
| Less: Allowance for doubtful accounts | (-0-)            | (10,489)    |
| Net accounts receivable               | \$<br>911,390 \$ | 416,373     |

Accounts receivable are periodically evaluated for collectability based on past credit history with clients. Provisions for losses on accounts receivable are determined on the basis of loss experience, known and inherent risk in the account balance and current economic conditions.

#### <u>Inventory</u>

Inventory represents raw and blended chemicals and other items valued at the lower of cost or market with cost determined using the weight average method which approximates first-in first-out method, and with market defined as the lower of replacement cost or realizable value.

As of March 31, 2016 and 2015, inventory consisted of the following:

|                 | <u>2016</u>   | <u>2015</u>   |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|
| Raw materials   | \$<br>300,575 | \$<br>145,329 |
| Finished goods  | 134,133       | 48,026        |
| Total inventory | \$<br>434,708 | \$<br>193,355 |

## *Property and equipment*

The Company records all property and equipment at cost less accumulated depreciation. Improvements are capitalized while repairs and maintenance costs are expensed as incurred. Depreciation is calculated using the straight-line method over the estimated useful life of the assets or the lease term, whichever is shorter. Depreciation periods are as follows for the relevant fixed assets:

Equipment 5 years

Equipment under capital lease 3 years or term of the lease

## **Stock-based Compensation**

The Company accounts for stock-based compensation to employees in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 718. Stock-based compensation to employees is measured at the grant date, based on the fair value of the award, and is recognized as expense over the requisite employee service period. The Company accounts for stock-based compensation to other than employees in accordance with ASC 505-50. Equity instruments issued to other than employees are valued at the earlier of a commitment date or upon completion of the services, based on the fair value of the equity instruments and is recognized as expense over the service period. The Company estimates the fair value of stock-based payments using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model for common stock options and warrants and the closing price of the Company s common stock for common share issuances.

## Advertising

Advertising costs are charged to operations when incurred. Advertising expenses for the years ended March 31, 2016 and 2015 were \$244,890 and \$499,978, respectively.

## Revenue recognition

The Company recognizes revenue when all of the following conditions are satisfied: (1) there is persuasive evidence of an arrangement; (2) the product or service has been provided to the customer; (3) the amount to be paid by the customer is fixed or determinable; and (4) the collection of such amount is probable.

The Company records revenue when it is realizable and earned upon shipment of the finished products. The Company does not accept returns due to the nature of the product. However, the Company will provide credit to our customers for damaged goods.

### Fair value measurements

The valuation of our embedded derivatives and warrant derivatives are determined primarily by the multinomial distribution (Lattice) model. An embedded derivative is a derivative instrument that is embedded within another contract, which under the convertible note (the host contract) includes the right to convert the note by the holder, certain default redemption right premiums and a change of control premium (payable in cash if a fundamental change occurs). In accordance with ASC 815 Accounting for Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities , as amended, these embedded derivatives are marked-to-market each reporting period, with a corresponding non-cash gain or loss charged to the current period. A warrant derivative liability is also determined in accordance with ASC 815. Based on ASC 815, warrants which are determined to be classified as derivative liabilities are marked-to-market each reporting period, with a corresponding non-cash gain or loss charged to the current period. The practical effect of this has been that when our stock price increases so does our derivative liability resulting in a non-cash loss charge that reduces our earnings and earnings per share. When our stock price declines, the Company records a non-cash gain, increasing our earnings and earnings per share. As such, fair value is a market-based measurement that should be determined based on assumptions that market participants would use in pricing an asset or liability. As a basis for considering such assumptions, there exists a three-tier fair value hierarchy, which prioritizes the inputs used in measuring fair value as follows:

Level 1 unadjusted quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities that the Company has the ability to access as of the measurement date.

## Level 2

inputs other than quoted prices included within Level 1 that are directly observable for the asset or liability or indirectly observable through corroboration with observable market data.

Level 3 unobservable inputs for the asset or liability only used when there is little, if any, market activity for the asset or liability at the measurement date.

This hierarchy requires the Company to use observable market data, when available, and to minimize the use of unobservable inputs when determining fair value.

To determine the fair value of our embedded derivatives, management evaluates assumptions regarding the probability of certain future events. Other factors used to determine fair value include our period end stock price, historical stock volatility, risk free interest rate and derivative term. The fair value recorded for the derivative liability varies from period to period. This variability may result in the actual derivative liability for a period either above or below the estimates recorded on our consolidated financial statements, resulting in significant fluctuations in other income (expense) because of the corresponding non-cash gain or loss recorded.

## Concentration

The Company has 3 major customers that together account for 57% (24%, 17%, and 15%, respectively) of accounts receivable at March 31, 2016, and 4 customers that together account for 60% (20%, 17%, 12%, and 11%, respectively) of the total revenues earned for the year ended March 31, 2016.

The Company has 4 vendors that accounted for 74% (24%, 17%, 17%, and 16%, respectively) of purchases for the year ended March 31, 2016.

The Company has 4 major customers that together account for 64% (23%, 18%, 12% and 11%, respectively) of accounts receivable at March 31, 2015, and 3 customers that together account for 47% (14%, 12%, and 11%, respectively) of the total revenues earned for the year ended March 31, 2015.

The Company has 5 vendors that accounted for 77% (19%, 16%, 16%, 15% and 11%, respectively) of purchases for the year ended March 31, 2015.

#### Income taxes

In accordance with ASC 740 Accounting for Income Taxes , the provision for income taxes is computed using the asset and liability method. Under the asset and liability method, deferred income tax assets and liabilities are determined based on the differences between the financial reporting and tax bases of assets and liabilities and are measured using the currently enacted tax rates and laws. A valuation allowance is provided for the amount of deferred tax assets that, based on available evidence, are not expected to be realized.

#### Basic and diluted loss per share

Basic and diluted earnings or loss per share (EPS) amounts in the consolidated financial statements are computed in accordance ASC 260 10 Earnings per Share, which establishes the requirements for presenting EPS. Basic EPS is based on the weighted average number of common shares outstanding. Diluted EPS is based on the weighted average number of common shares outstanding and dilutive common stock equivalents. Basic EPS is computed by dividing net income or loss available to common stockholders (numerator) by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding (denominator) during the period. Potentially dilutive securities were excluded from the calculation of diluted loss per share, because their effect would be anti-dilutive.

#### **Business segments**

The Company operates on one segment in one geographic location the United States of America and, therefore, segment information is not presented.

## Fair value of financial instruments

The carrying amounts of the company s financial instruments including accounts payable, accrued expenses, and notes payable approximate fair value due to the relative short period for maturity these instruments.

Environmental costs

Environmental expenditures that relate to current operations are expensed or capitalized as appropriate. Expenditures that relate to an existing condition caused by past operations, and which do not contribute to current or future revenue generation, are expensed. Liabilities are recorded when environmental assessments and/or remedial efforts are probable, and the cost can be reasonably estimated. Generally, the timing of these accruals coincides with the earlier of completion of a feasibility study or the Company s commitments to a plan of action based on the then known facts.

The Company incurred no environmental expenses during the years ended March 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

#### **Reclassification**

Certain accounts in the prior period were reclassified to conform to the current period financial statements presentation.

## Newly issued accounting pronouncements

In July 2015, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) issued Accounting Standards Update No. 2015-11 (ASU 2015-11) "Simplifying the Measurement of Inventory". According to ASU 2015-11 an entity should measure inventory within the scope of this update at the lower of cost and net realizable value. Net realizable value is the estimated selling prices in the ordinary course of business, less reasonably predictable costs of completion, disposal, and transportation. Subsequent measurement is unchanged for inventory measured using LIFO or the retail inventory method. The amendments in ASU 2015-11 more closely align the measurement of inventory in GAAP with the measurement of inventory in International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRS). The Board has amended some of the other guidance in Topic 330 to more clearly articulate the requirements for the measurement and disclosure of inventory. However, the Board does not intend for those clarifications to result in any changes in practice. Other than the change in the subsequent measurement guidance from the lower of cost or market to the lower of cost and net realizable value for inventory within the scope of ASU 2015-11, there are no other substantive changes to the guidance on measurement of inventory. For public business entities, the amendments in ASU 2015-11 are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within those fiscal years. For all other entities, the amendments in ASU 2015-11 are effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017. The amendments in ASU 2015-11 should be applied prospectively with earlier application permitted as of the beginning of an interim or annual reporting period.

The Board decided that the only disclosures required at transition should be the nature of and reason for the change in accounting principle. An entity should disclose that information in the first annual period of adoption and in the interim periods within the first annual period if there is a measurement-period adjustment during the first annual period in which the changes are effective.

The Company has evaluated other recent accounting pronouncements through June 2016 and believes that none of them will have a material effect on our financial statements.

## NOTE 2 GOING CONCERN

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern, which contemplates the recoverability and/or acquisition and sale of assets and the satisfaction of liabilities in the normal course of business. Since its inception, the Company has been engaged substantially in financing activities, developing its business plan and building its initial customer and distribution base for its products. As a result, the Company incurred accumulated net losses from Inception (June 19, 2012) through the period ended March 31, 2016 of (\$19,933,934). In addition, the Company s development activities since inception have been financially sustained through debt and equity financing.

The ability of the Company to continue as a going concern is dependent upon its ability to raise additional capital from the sale of common stock and, ultimately, the achievement of significant operating revenues. These financial statements do not include any adjustments relating to the recoverability and classification of recorded asset amounts, or amounts and classification of liabilities that might result from this uncertainty.

## NOTE 3 PROPERTY AND EQUIPMENT

Fixed assets consisted of the following at:

|                                | N  | March 31, 2016 | March | n 31, 2015 |
|--------------------------------|----|----------------|-------|------------|
| Machinery and Equipment        | \$ | 970,728        | \$    | 625,766    |
| Machinery under Capital Lease  |    | 735,781        |       | 735,781    |
| Office Equipment               |    | 53,631         |       | 53,631     |
| Leasehold Improvements         |    | 3,979          |       | 3,979      |
|                                |    |                |       |            |
| Less: Accumulated Depreciation |    | (537,555)      |       | (219,257)  |
| Fixed Assets, net              | \$ | 1,226,534      | \$    | 1,199,900  |

Depreciation expense for the years ended March 31, 2016 and 2015 was \$318,328 and \$175,036, respectively.

## NOTE 4 EQUIPMENT DEPOSITS RELATED PARTY

The Company paid for equipment to Water Engineering Solutions, LLC, a related party, \$312,500 and \$1,470,741 for the years ended March 31, 2016 and March 31, 2015. At March 31, 2016 and March 31, 2015, the Company owed \$0.00 and \$43,036 respectively to Water Engineering Solutions, LLC. The equipment is being manufactured by and under an exclusive manufacturing contract from Water Engineering Solutions, LLC, an entity that is controlled and majority owned by Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright, for the production of our alkaline water.

#### NOTE 5 REVOLVING FINANCING

On February 20, 2014, The Alkaline Water Company Inc., and subsidiaries, Alkaline 88, LLC and Alkaline Water Corp., entered into a revolving accounts receivable funding agreement with Gibraltar Business Capital, LLC (Gibraltar ). Under the agreement, from time to time, the Company agreed to tender to Gibraltar all of our accounts (which is defined as our rights to payment whether or not earned by performance, (i) for property that has been or is to be sold, leased, licensed, assigned or otherwise disposed of, or (ii) for services rendered or to be rendered, or (iii) as otherwise defined in the Uniform Commercial Code of the State of Illinois). Gibraltar will have the right, but will not be obligated, to purchase such accounts tendered in its sole discretion. If Gibraltar purchases such accounts, Gibraltar will make cash advances to us as the purchase price for the purchased accounts.

The Company assumed full risk of non-payment and unconditionally guaranteed the full and prompt payment of the full face amount of all purchased accounts. The Company also agreed to direct all parties obligated to pay the accounts to send all payments for all accounts directly to Gibraltar. All collections from accounts will be applied to our indebtedness, which is defined as the amount owed by us to Gibraltar from time to time, i.e., all cash advances, plus all charges, plus all other amounts owning from us to Gibraltar pursuant to the agreement, less all collections retained by Gibraltar from either purchased accounts or from us which are applied to indebtedness, unless Gibraltar elects to hold any such collections to establish reserves to secure payment of any purchased accounts.

In consideration of Gibraltar s purchase of the accounts, the Company agreed to pay Gibraltar interest on the indebtedness outstanding at the rate of 8% per annum plus the prime rate in effect at the end of each month with the prime rate for these purposes never being less than 3.25% per annum, calculated on a 360-day year and payable monthly. In addition, the Company agreed to pay to Gibraltar a monthly collateral/management fee in the amount of 0.5% calculated on the average daily borrowing amount for the given month and an unused line fee of 0.25% monthly based on the difference between the actual line of credit and the average daily borrowing amount for the given month. The Company also agreed to pay to Gibraltar upon execution of the agreement and as of the commencement of each renewal term, a closing cost of 1% of the initial indebtedness in addition to the amount of any other credit accommodations granted from Gibraltar, which amount will be deducted from the first cash advances.

The initial indebtedness is \$500,000 and the Company increased the amount available under the revolving accounts receivable funding agreement to \$900,000 on May 12, 2016. The Company may request further increase(s) to the in \$100,000 increments up to \$5,000,000, subject the Company s financial performance and/or projections are satisfactory to Gibraltar, and absent an event of default. The Company also granted to Gibraltar a security interest in all of our presently-owned and hereafter-acquired personal and fixture property, wherever located. The agreement will continue until the first to occur of (i) demand by Gibraltar; or (ii) 24 months from the first day of the month following the date that the first purchased account is purchased and will be automatically renewed for successive periods of 12 months thereafter unless, at least 30 days prior to the end of the term, the Company gives Gibraltar notice of our intention to terminate the agreement. In addition, the Company will be able to exit the agreement at any time for a fee of 2% of the line of credit in place at the time of prepayment. On March 31, 2016 the amount borrowed on this facility was \$475,273.

#### NOTE 6 DERIVATIVE LIABILITY

On November 7, 2013, the Company sold to certain institutional investors 10% Series B Convertible Preferred Shares which are subject to mandatory redemption and include down-round provisions that reduce the exercise price of a warrant and convertible instrument. As required by ASC 815 Derivatives and Hedging, if the Company either issues equity shares for a price that is lower than the exercise price of those instruments or issues new warrants or convertible instruments that have a lower exercise price, the investors will be entitled to down-round protection. The Company evaluated whether its warrants and convertible debt instruments contain provisions that protect holders from declines in its stock price or otherwise could result in modification of either the exercise price or the shares to be issued under the respective warrant agreements. The Company determined that a portion of its outstanding warrants and conversion instruments contained such provisions thereby concluding they were not indexed to the Company s own stock and therefore a derivative instrument.

Between April 16, 2014 and April 24, 2014, the Company redeemed 247 shares of the 10% Series B Preferred Stock for \$247,171 plus accrued interest of \$46,456 and a \$10,212 penalty related to the delayed registration. The effect of this redemption resulted in a reduction of \$56,098 derivative liability.

On May 1, 2014, the Company completed the offering and sale of an aggregate of 346,667 shares of our common stock and warrants to purchase an aggregate of 173,333 shares of our common stock, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$2,599,999. Each share of common stock sold in the offering was accompanied by a warrant to purchase one-half of a share of common stock at an exercise price of \$7.50 per share for a period of five years from the date of issuance. Each share of common stock, together with each warrant was sold at a price of \$7.50. The warrants include down-round provisions that reduce the exercise price of a warrant and convertible instrument. As required by ASC 815 Derivatives and Hedging, if the Company either issues equity shares for a price that is lower than the exercise price of those instruments or issues new warrants or convertible instruments that have a lower exercise price, the investors will be entitled to down-round protection. The Company evaluated whether its warrants and convertible debt instruments contain provisions that protect holders from declines in its stock price or otherwise could result in modification of either the exercise price or the shares to be issued under the respective warrant agreements. The Company determined that a portion of its outstanding warrants and conversion instruments contained such provisions thereby concluding were not indexed to the Company s own stock and therefore a derivative instrument.

On August 20, 2014, the Company entered into a warrant amendment agreement with certain holders of the Company s outstanding common stock purchase warrants whereby the Company agreed to reduce the exercise price of the Existing Warrants to \$5.00 per share in consideration for the immediate exercise of the Existing Warrants by the Holders and the Holders are to be issued new common stock purchase warrants of the Company in the form of the Existing Warrants to purchase up to a number of shares of our common stock equal to the number of Existing Warrants exercised by the Holders, provided that the exercise price of the New Warrants will be \$6.25 per share, subject to adjustment in the New Warrants. Each New Warrant has a term of five years from the date of issuance. Each share of common stock, together with each warrant was sold at a price of \$6.25. The warrants include

down-round provisions that reduce the exercise price of a warrant and convertible instrument. As required by ASC 815 Derivatives and Hedging , if the Company either issues equity shares for a price that is lower than the exercise price of those instruments or issues new warrants or convertible instruments that have a lower exercise price, the investors will be entitled to down-round protection. The Company evaluated whether its warrants and convertible debt instruments contain provisions that protect holders from declines in its stock price or otherwise could result in modification of either the exercise price or the shares to be issued under the respective warrant agreements. The Company determined that a portion of its outstanding warrants and conversion instruments contained such provisions thereby concluding they were not indexed to the Company s own stock and therefore a derivative instrument. The derivative liability was increased by \$167,384 as a result of the issued warrants.

On August 21, 2014, pursuant to the Warrant Amendment Agreement, the Company issued an aggregate of 196,589 shares of the Company s common stock upon exercise of the Existing Warrants at an exercise price of \$5.00 per share for aggregate gross proceeds of \$982,945. An aggregate of 173,333shares of our common stock issued upon exercise of the Existing Warrants. The derivative liability was reduced by \$168,273 as a result of the warrants exercised.

Pursuant to the engagement agreement dated March 12, 2014 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (Wainwright), Wainwright agreed to act as our exclusive placement agent in connection with the offering. Pursuant to the engagement agreement, the Company, the Company issued warrants to purchase an aggregate of 5.5% of the aggregate number of shares of our common stock sold in the offering, or 19,067 to Wainwright and its designees. These warrants have an exercise price of \$9.38 per share and expire on April 16, 2019. The warrants include down-round provisions that reduce the exercise price of a warrant and convertible instrument. As required by ASC Derivatives and Hedging, if the Company either issues equity shares for a price that is lower than the exercise price of those instruments or issues new warrants or convertible instruments that have a lower exercise price, the investors will be entitled to down-round protection. The Company evaluated whether its warrants and convertible debt instruments contain provisions that protect holders from declines in its stock price or otherwise could result in modification of either the exercise price or the shares to be issued under the respective warrant agreements. The Company determined that a portion of its outstanding warrants and conversion instruments contained such provisions thereby concluding they were not indexed to the Company s own stock and therefore a derivative instrument.

The range of significant assumptions which the Company used to measure the fair value of warrant liabilities (a level 3 input) at April 24, 2014 is as follows:

|                 | Conv | ersion feature |
|-----------------|------|----------------|
| Stock price     | \$   | 16 .3275       |
| Term (Years)    |      | Less than 1    |
| Volatility      |      | 331%           |
| Exercise prices | \$   | 21.50          |
| Dividend yield  |      | 0%             |

The range of significant assumptions which the Company used to measure the fair value of warrant liabilities (a level 3 input) at May 1, 2014 is as follows:

|                 |     |                 | P  | Placement Agent |
|-----------------|-----|-----------------|----|-----------------|
|                 | Iss | suance Warrants |    | Warrants        |
| Stock price     | \$  | 7. 50           | \$ | 7. 50           |
| Term (Years)    |     | 5               |    | 5               |
| Volatility      |     | 306%            |    | 306%            |
| Exercise prices | \$  | 7. 50           | \$ | 9.375           |
| Dividend yield  |     | 0%              |    | 0%              |

The range of significant assumptions which the Company used to measure the fair value of warrant liabilities (a level 3 input) at August 20, 2014 is as follows:

|                 | New | Warrants |
|-----------------|-----|----------|
| Stock price     | \$  | 6.00     |
| Term (Years)    |     | 5        |
| Volatility      |     | 247%     |
| Exercise prices | \$  | 6. 50    |
| Dividend yield  |     | 0%       |

The range of significant assumptions which the Company used to measure the fair value of warrant liabilities (a level 3 input) at August 21, 2014 is as follows:

|                 | Existin | g Warrants |
|-----------------|---------|------------|
| Stock price     | \$      | 8.50       |
| Term (Years)    |         | 5          |
| Volatility      |         | 247%       |
| Exercise prices | \$      | 5.00       |
| Dividend yield  |         | 0%         |

The range of significant assumptions which the Company used to measure the fair value of warrant liabilities (a level 3 input) at March 31, 2015 is as follows:

|                 |      | Warrants                 |
|-----------------|------|--------------------------|
|                 | (inc | cluding placement agent) |
| Stock price     | \$   | 5.40                     |
| Term (Years)    |      | 4 to 5                   |
| Volatility      |      | 148%                     |
| Exercise prices | \$   | 27.50 to 6.50            |
| Dividend yield  |      | 0%                       |

The range of significant assumptions which the Company used to measure the fair value of warrant liabilities (a level 3 input) at March 31, 2016 is as follows:

|                 |      | Warrants                 |
|-----------------|------|--------------------------|
|                 | (inc | cluding placement agent) |
| Stock price     | \$   | 1.950                    |
| Term (Years)    |      | 3 to 4                   |
| Volatility      |      | 126%                     |
| Exercise prices | \$   | 27.50 to 0.33            |
| Dividend yield  |      | 0%                       |

During the year ended March 31, 2016, certain Warrant holders from the August 21, 2014 Warrant Amendment Agreement exercised their warrants via a cashless exercise where-in 54,154 warrants were tendered, the shareholders received 26,976 shares and the shareholders forfeited 27,178 warrants. The Company reduced the derivative liability \$62,986.

During the year ended March 31, 2016, certain Warrant holders from the August 21, 2014 Warrant Amendment Agreement and the Company agreed to exchange 133,791 warrants for 133,791 shares of common stock and the Company reduced the derivative liability by \$76,843.

During the year ended March 31, 2016 the Company issued shares of stock at \$3.50 which reduced the exercise price of the Existing Warrants.

The following table sets forth the fair value hierarchy within our financial assets and liabilities by level that were accounted for at fair value on a recurring basis as of May 1, 2014.

|                              | Fair Value Measurement at May 1, 2014 |                                    |         |      |         |      |         |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------|------|---------|------|---------|
|                              | •                                     | Carrying<br>Value at<br>ay 1, 2014 | Level 1 |      | Level 2 |      | Level 3 |
| Liabilities:                 |                                       |                                    |         |      |         |      |         |
|                              |                                       |                                    |         |      |         |      |         |
| Derivative warrant liability | \$                                    | 216,236                            | \$      | - \$ |         | - \$ | 216,236 |

| Derivative placement agent warrant | \$<br>23,787  | \$<br>- | \$<br>- | \$<br>23,787  |
|------------------------------------|---------------|---------|---------|---------------|
| liability                          |               |         |         |               |
| Total derivative liability         | \$<br>240,023 | \$<br>- | \$<br>- | \$<br>240,023 |

The following table sets forth the fair value hierarchy added to our financial liabilities by level that were accounted for at fair value on a recurring basis as of August 21, 2014.

## Fair Value Measurement at August 21, 2014

|                                 | Carrying<br>Value at<br>August 21, 2014 | Level 1 |   | Level 2 | 8  | Level 3 |
|---------------------------------|---|---------|---|---------|----|---------|
| Liabilities:                    |   |         |   |         |    |         |
|                                 |   |         |   |         |    |         |
| Derivative warrant liability \$ | 149.687                                 | \$      | _ | \$<br>_ | \$ | 149,687 |

The following table sets forth the fair value hierarchy within our financial assets and liabilities by level that were accounted for at fair value on a recurring basis as of March 31, 2015.

|  | Carrying<br>Value at<br>rch 31, 2015 | Level 1 | Level 2    | Level 3 |
|--|--------------------------------------|---------|------------|---------|
| Liabilities:   |                                      |         |            |         |
|  |                                      |         |            |         |
| Derivative convertible debt liability  | \$<br>-                              | \$<br>- | \$<br>- \$ | -       |
| Derivative warrant liability convertible preferred stock   | \$<br>176,486                        | \$<br>- | \$<br>- \$ | 176,486 |
| Derivative warrants liability on<br>common stock issuance<br>including placement agent<br>warrants | \$<br>18,454                         | \$<br>- | \$<br>- \$ | 18,454  |
| Total derivative liability   | \$<br>194,940                        | \$<br>- | \$<br>- \$ | 194,940 |

The following table sets forth the fair value hierarchy within our financial assets and liabilities by level that were accounted for at fair value on a recurring basis as of March 31, 2016.

## Fair Value Measurement at March 31, 2016

|                                       | Va | rrying<br>lue at<br>n 31, 2015 |    | Level 1 |    | Level 2 |    | Level 3 |
|---------------------------------------|----|--------------------------------|----|---------|----|---------|----|---------|
| Liabilities:                          |    |                                |    |         |    |         |    |         |
|                                       |    |                                |    |         |    |         |    |         |
| Derivative convertible debt liability | \$ | -                              | \$ | -       | \$ | -       | \$ | -       |
| Derivative warrant liability          | \$ | 8,291                          | \$ | _       | \$ | _       | \$ | 8,291   |
| convertible preferred stock           | Ψ  | 0,271                          | Ψ  |         | Ψ  |         | Ψ  | 0,271   |
| Derivative warrants liability on      | \$ | 2,852                          | \$ | -       | \$ | -       | \$ | 2,852   |
| common stock issuance                 |    |                                |    |         |    |         |    |         |
| including placement agent             |    |                                |    |         |    |         |    |         |
| warrants                              |    |                                |    |         |    |         |    |         |
| Total derivative liability            | \$ | 11,143                         | \$ | _       | \$ | -       | \$ | 11.143  |

The Company analyzed the warrants and conversion feature under ASC 815 Derivatives and Hedging to determine the derivative liability. The Company estimated the fair value of these derivatives using a multinomial distribution (Lattice) valuation model. The fair value of these warrant liabilities at March 31, 2015 was \$194,940 and the conversion feature liability was \$0. At March 31, 2016 the fair value of these warrant liabilities was \$11,143 and the conversion feature liability was \$0. Changes in the derivative liability for the period ended March 31, 2016 consist of:

|   | Year Ended<br>March 31, 2016 |           |  |
|---|------------------------------|-----------|--|
| Derivative liability at March 31, 2015        | \$                           | 194,940   |  |
| Warrants Exercised                            |                              | (139,829) |  |
| Change in derivative liability mark to market |                              | (43,968)  |  |
| Derivative liability at March 31, 2016        | \$                           | 11,143    |  |

## NOTE 7 PREFERRED SHARES SUBJECT TO MANDATORY REDEMPTION

## Convertible preferred shares

On November 7, 2013, the Company sold to certain institutional investors an aggregate of 500 shares of our 10% Series B Convertible Preferred Stock (Series B Preferred Stock) at a stated value of \$1,000 per share of Series B Preferred Stock for gross proceeds of \$500,000. Additionally the investors also received Series A, Series B and Series C common stock purchase warrants. The Series A warrants will be exercisable into 1,162,791 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$0.55 per share, the Series B warrants will be exercisable into 1,162,791 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$0.43 per share and the Series C warrants will be exercisable into 1,162,791 shares our common stock at an exercise price of \$0.55 per share. Holders of the Series B Preferred Stock will be entitled to receive cumulative dividends at the rate per share (as a percentage of the stated value per share) of 10% per annum, payable semi-annually. Each share of the Series B Preferred Stock will be convertible at the option of the holder thereof into that number of shares of common stock determined by dividing the stated value of such share of the Series B Preferred Stock by the conversion price of \$0.43, subject to later adjustment. On November 4, 2013, the Company also entered into a registration rights agreement with the investors pursuant to which the Company was obligated to file a registration statement to register the resale of the shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of the Series B Preferred Stock and upon exercise of the Warrants.

Between April 16, 2014 and April 22, 2014, the holders of our Series B Preferred Stock exercised their right to have the Company redeem their shares whereby the Company redeemed 247.17 shares of Series B Preferred Stock for \$303,839, which included accrued interest of \$46,456 and a penalty for late registration of \$10,212. The remaining portion of the Series B Preferred Stock, or 252.83 shares, was converted into 796,566 of our common shares at a conversion price of \$0.3174 per share.

Effective November 7, 2013, the Company issued common stock purchase warrants to the placement agent and its designees as compensation for the services provided by the placement agent in connection with our private placement of 500.00028 shares Series B Preferred Stock, which was completed on November 7, 2013. The warrants issued to the placement agent and its designees are exercisable into an aggregate of 116,279 shares of our common stock with an exercise price of \$0.55 per share and have a term of exercise of five years. The Company issued the warrants to six accredited investors and paid certain transactional costs of \$78,000. For the period ended December 31, 2014 the Company recorded \$54,288 of amortization of the debt discount and deferred financing cost.

The Series B Preferred Stock included down-round provisions that reduce the exercise price of a warrant and convertible instrument as required by ASC 815 Derivatives and Hedging . The aggregate of the derivative liability at issuance was \$955,927, which was recorded as amortization of debt discount at issuance and amortized \$360,082 cost over the redemption period.

## NOTE 8 STOCKHOLDERS EQUITY

## Preferred shares

On October 7, 2013, the Company amended its articles of incorporation to create 100,000,000 shares of preferred stock by filing a Certificate of Amendment to Articles of Incorporation with the Secretary of State of Nevada. The

preferred stock may be divided into and issued in series, with such designations, rights, qualifications, preferences, limitations and terms as fixed and determined by our board of directors. The Series A Preferred Stock had 10 votes per share (reduced to 0.2 votes per share as a result of the fifty for one reverse stock split, which became effective as of December 30, 2015) and are not convertible into shares of our common stock. The Series B Convertible Preferred shares have 1,000 shares of our authorized preferred stock are designated as 10% Series B Convertible Preferred Stock , which have a stated value of \$1,000 per share and have liquidation preferences, dividend rights, redemption rights and conversion rights, of which none were issued at March 31, 2016.

## Grant of series A preferred stock

On October 8, 2013, the Company issued a total of 20,000,000 shares of non-convertible Series A Preferred Stock to Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (10,000,000 shares to each), our directors and executive officers, in consideration for the past services, at a deemed value of \$0.001 per share. The company valued these shares based on the cost considering the time and average billing rate of these individuals and recorded a \$20,000 stock compensation cost for the year ended March 31, 2014.

Our authorized preferred stock was not affected by the reverse stock split and continues to be 100,000,000 shares of preferred stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share. In addition, the number of issued and outstanding shares of Series A Preferred Stock continues to be 20,000,000. However, holders of Series A Preferred Stock had 0.2 vote per share of Series A Preferred Stock, instead of 10 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock, as a result of the reverse-stock split.

On January 22, 2016, the Company amended the certificate of designation for our Series A Preferred Stock by filing an amendment to certificate of designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada. The Company amended the certificate of designation for our Series A Preferred Stock by deleting Section 2.2 of the certificate of designation, which proportionately increases or decreases the number of votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock in the event of any dividend or other distribution on our common stock payable in its common stock or a subdivision or consolidation of the outstanding shares of its common stock. Accordingly, holders of Series A Preferred Stock will have 10 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock, instead of 0.2 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock.

## Grant of series C Convertible preferred stock

On March 30, 2016, the Company designated 3,000,000 shares of the authorized and unissued preferred stock of our company as Series C Preferred Stock by filing a Certificate of Designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada. Each share of the Series C Preferred Stock will be convertible, without the payment of any additional consideration by the holder and at the option of the holder, into one fully paid and non-assessable share of our common stock at any time after (i) the Company achieves consolidated revenue equal to or greater than \$15,000,000 in any 12 month period, ending on the last day of any quarterly period of our fiscal year; or (ii) a Negotiated Trigger Event, defined as an event upon which the Series C Preferred Stock will be convertible as may be agreed by our company and the holder in writing from time to time.

Effective March 31, 2016, the Company issued a total of 3,000,000 shares of our Series C Preferred Stock to Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (1,500,000 shares to each), our directors and executive officers, pursuant to their employment agreements dated effective March 1, 2016.

#### Common stock

The Company is authorized to issue 1,125,000,000 shares of \$0.001 par value common stock. On May 31, 2013, the Company effected a 15-for-1 forward stock split of our \$0.001 par value common stock. All shares and per share amounts have been retroactively restated to reflect such split. Prior to the acquisition of Alkaline Water Corp., the Company had 109,500,000 shares of common stock issued and outstanding. On May 31, 2013, the Company issued 43,000,000 shares in exchange for a 100% interest in Alkaline Water Corp. For accounting purposes, the acquisition of Alkaline Water Corp. by The Alkaline Water Company Inc. has been recorded as a reverse acquisition of a company and recapitalization of Alkaline Water Corp. based on the factors demonstrating that Alkaline Water Corp. represents the accounting acquirer. Consequently, after the closing of this agreement the Company adopted the business of Alkaline Water Corp. s wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline 88, LLC. As part of the acquisition, the former management of the Company agreed to cancel 75,000,000 shares of common stock.

On December 30, 2015, the Company effected a fifty for one reverse stock split of its authorized and issued and outstanding shares of common stock. As a result, the authorized common stock has decreased from 1,125,000,000 shares of common stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share, to 22,500,000 shares of common stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share. All shares and per share amounts have been retroactively restated to reflect such split.

On January 21, 2016, stockholders of our company approved, by written consents, an amendment to the articles of incorporation of our company to increase the number of authorized shares of our common stock from 22,500,000 to 200,000,000.

The Company received written consents representing 20,776,000 votes from the holders of shares of its common stock and our Series A Preferred Stock voting as a single class, representing approximately 61% of the voting power of its outstanding common stock and its outstanding Series A Preferred Stock voting as a single class as of the record date (January 12, 2016). On January 21, 2016, there were no written consents received by the Company representing a vote against, abstention or broker non-vote with respect to the proposal.

#### Sale of restricted shares

During the period from May 7, 2015 through December 31, 2015, the Company sold units of our securities at a price of \$3.50 per unit. Each unit consists of one share of our common stock and one non-transferable common stock purchase warrant, with each common stock purchase warrant entitling the holder to acquire one additional share of our common stock at a price of \$5.00 per share for a period of two years. The Company sold 223,200 units during the period ended December 31, 2015 consisting of 223,200 shares of common stock and 223,200 warrants for gross proceeds of \$781,200.

The evaluated these transaction using ASC 480-10 Distinguishing liabilities from equity and ASC 505-10 Equity . The Company sold 223,200 units and issued 223,200 shares of common stock and issued 223,200 warrants. The warrants were valued using the Black-Scholes option pricing model with the following assumptions:

| Market value of stock on purchase date | \$<br>3.75 | to \$ | 7.10  |
|--|------------|-------|-------|
| Risk-free interest rate                | .26%       | to    | 1.42% |
| Dividend yield                         |            | 0.00% |       |
| Volatility factor                      | 116%       | to    | 161%  |
| Weighted average expected life (years) |            | 2     |       |

The proceeds were allocated as follows:

| Common stock   | \$<br>414,036 |
|----------------|---------------|
| Warrant        | 367,164       |
| Total proceeds | \$<br>781,200 |

On May 1, 2014, the Company completed the offering and sale of an aggregate of 346,667 shares of our common stock and warrants to purchase an aggregate of 173,333 shares of our common stock, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$2,599,999. Each share of common stock the Company sold in the offering was accompanied by a warrant to purchase one-half of a share of common stock at an exercise price of \$7.50 per share for a period of five years from the date of issuance. Each share of common stock, together with each warrant was sold at a price of \$7.50.

Pursuant to the engagement agreement dated March 12, 2014 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (Wainwright), Wainwright agreed to act as our exclusive placement agent in connection with the offering. Pursuant to the engagement agreement, the Company paid Wainwright a cash placement fee equal to 8% of the aggregate gross proceeds from the offering, or \$208,000, and a non-accountable expense allowance equal to 1% of the aggregate gross proceeds from the offering, or \$26,000. In addition, the Company issued warrants to purchase an aggregate of 5.5% of the aggregate number of shares of our common stock sold in the offering, or 19,067, to Wainwright and its designees. These warrants have an exercise price of \$9.38 per share and expire on April 16, 2019.

On March 4, 2016, the Company completed the offering and sale of an aggregate of 9,000,000 shares of our common stock and warrants to purchase an aggregate of 4,500,000 shares of our common stock, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$2,970,000. Each share of common stock the Company sold in the offering was accompanied by one-half of a warrant to purchase one share of common stock at an exercise price of \$0.50 per share for a period of two years from the date of issuance. Each share of common stock and accompanying one-half of one warrant was sold at a price of \$0.33.

These securities have been registered under the Securities Act of 1933 pursuant to our registration statement on Form S-1, as amended (No. 333-209124), which was declared effective by the Securities and Exchange Commission on February 11, 2016.

Also on March 4, 2016, the Company used the proceeds of the Offering to repay loans in the aggregate principal amounts of \$1,500,000 In connection with the repayment of loans in the aggregate principal amounts of \$1,500,000 on March 4, 2016, 526,316 shares of our common stock issued to Neil Rogers and held in escrow and 1,500,000 shares of our common stock issued to Turnstone Capital Inc. and held in escrow were cancelled effective as of March 31, 2016.

#### Common stock issued for services

On May 15, 2014, the Company issued 2,000 restricted common shares to consultant for services rendered and that were valued at the market value on that date of \$7.50 per share.

On June 2, 2014, the Company issued 2,000 restricted common shares to consultant for services rendered and that were valued at the market value on that date of \$6.50 per share.

On June 6, 2014, the Company issued 20,000 restricted common shares to consultant for services rendered and that were valued at the market value on that date of \$6.50 per share.

On June 11, 2014, the Company issued 5,000 restricted common shares to consultant for services rendered and that were valued at the market value on that date of \$6.05 per share.

On July 3, 2014, the Company entered into an agreement with a third-party to provide consulting services. The compensation in the agreement was \$25,000 in cash upon execution of the agreement and the issuance of 7,000 of the Company s common shares as follows: 3,500 common shares upon execution of the agreement, 1,400 common shares on or before July 15, 2014, 1,400 common shares on or before August 15, 2014 and 700 common shares on or before September 15, 2014.

On August 1, 2014, the Company issued 20,000 common shares to a consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$875 per share.

On August 7, 2014, the Company entered into an agreement with a third-party to provide consulting services. The compensation in the agreement was for 40,000 of the Company s common shares to be issued as follows: 10,000 common shares on the date of the execution of the agreement, 10,000 common shares on the date that is 45 days from the execution date, 10,000 common shares on the date that is 135 days from the execution date.

On September 2, 2014, the Company issued 1,000 common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$6. 75 per share.

On September 30, 2014, the Company issued6,000 common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$5.00 per share.

On October 1, 2014, the Company issued 800 common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$5.65 per share.

On February 18, 2015, the Company issued1,000 common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$3.50 per share.

On February 18, 2015, the Company issued 24,500 common shares to consultants for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$5.00 per share.

On February 18, 2015, the Company issued71,000 common shares to employees for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$5.00 per share.

On April 7, 2015, the Company issued 40,000 restricted common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$3.50 per share.

On April 10, 2015, the Company issued 30,000 restricted common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$4.85 per share.

On April 27, 2015, the Company issued 40,000 restricted common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$4.00 per share.

On May 1, 2015, the Company issued 5,000 restricted common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$4.00 per share.

On May 6, 2015, the Company issued 6,000 restricted common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$4.85 per share.

On June 15, 2015 the Company issued 30,000 restricted common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$4.70 per share.

On August 1, 2015 the Company issued 5,000 restricted common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$6.75 per share.

On August 25, 2015 the Company issued 30,000 restricted common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$5.45 per share.

On August 27, 2015 the Company issued 6,000 restricted common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$5.05 per share.

On August 28, 2015 the Company issued 4,000 common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$5.00 per share.

On September 30, 2015 the Company issued 10,000 common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$4.90 per share.

On December 11, 2015 the Company issued 24,000 common shares to consultants for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$2.15 per share.

On December 11, 2015, the Company issued 44,000 common shares to employees for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$2.15 per share.

On January 19, 2016, the Company reached an agreement with a contractor and agreed to issue 60,000 shares of restricted common stock for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$0.90 per share.

On January 28, 2016, the company is sued 10,000 shares of common stock for pasts ervices performed by a former employee of our company.

On January 29, 2016, the Company issued 400,000 common shares to a consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$0.52 per share.

On February 5, 2016, the Company reached an agreement with a contractor and agreed to issue 10,000 shares of restricted common stock for services that were valued at the market value on that date of \$0.85 per share.

On March 1 2016, the Company reached an agreement with a contractor and agreed to issue 945,000 shares of common stock for services that were valued at the market value on that date of \$0.99 per share.

On March 1, 2016, the company is sued 30,000 shares of common stock forpastservices performed by a former employee of our company.

#### Common stock issued in conjunction with notes

On May 22, 2015, the Company issued 20,000 restricted common shares in conjunction with a \$250,000 note payable that were valued at the market value on that date of \$3.95 per share.

On August, 20, 2015, the Company issued 20,000 restricted common shares in conjunction with a \$240,000 note payable that were valued at the market value on that date of \$5.75 per share.

On October 28, 2015, the Company issued 10,000 restricted common shares in conjunction with a \$62,000 note payable that were valued at the market value on that date of \$4.25 per share.

On March 30, 2016 pursuant to a convertible note issued September 28, 2015 the \$89,100 of principal balance was converted to 270,000 common shares of the Company Stock.

On March 31, 2016, the Company entered into a promissory note and warrant exchange agreement (the "March Exchange Agreement") with six holders of our promissory notes (each, a "Note") in the aggregate principal amount of \$310,000 and warrants (each, a "March Warrant") to purchase an aggregate of 88,563 shares of our common stock, whereby we exchanged the holders' Notes and March Warrants, for no additional consideration, for an aggregate of 551,246 shares of our common stock (the "March Exchange"), and following the March Exchange, the Notes and March Warrants were automatically cancelled and terminated and the holders have no further rights pursuant to the Notes, March Warrants and any agreement or instrument pursuant to which such Notes or March Warrants were issued. Pursuant to the March Exchange Agreement, the Company issued an aggregate of 551,246 shares of our common stock upon exchange of the above mentioned Notes and March Warrants.

#### **NOTE 9 – OPTIONS AND WARRANTS**

## Stock option awards

On October 9, 2013, the Company granted a total of 120,000 stock options to Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (60,000 stock options to each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$30.25 per share for a period of ten years from the date of grant. The stock options vest as follows: (i) 20,000 upon the date of grant; and (ii) 10,000 per quarter until fully vested.

On May 12, 2014, the Company granted a total of 16,400 stock options to employees and consultants. The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$7.50 per share for a period of ten years from the date of grant. 10,050 stock options vested upon the date of grant, 2,325 stock options vest on December 31, 2014, 2,325 stock options vest on December 31, 2014 and 1,700 stock options vest on December 31, 2014.

On May 12, 2014, the Company granted a total of 24,000 stock options Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (12,000 stock options to each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$8.25 per share for a period of ten years from the date of grant. 24,000 stock options vested upon the date of grant.

On May 16, 2014, the Company granted a total of 5,000 stock options to a consultant. The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$7.15 per share for a period of ten years from the date of grant. 1,250 stock options vested upon the date of grant, 1,250 stock options vest on December 31, 2014, 1,250 stock options vest on December 31, 2014 and 1,250 stock options vest on December 31, 2014.

On May 21, 2014, the Company granted a total of 120,000 stock options Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (60,000 stock options to each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$7.275 per share for a period of ten years from the date of grant. 60,000 stock options vested upon the date of grant and the 60,000 stock options will vest on November 21, 2014.

On October 31, 2014, the Company amended the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan to, among other things, increase the number of shares of stock of the company available for the grant of awards under the plan from 400,000 shares to 700,000 shares.

On October 31, 2014, the Company reduced the exercise price of an aggregate of 120,000 stock options granted on October 9, 2013 to Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright, our directors and executive officers, to \$7.50 per share and extended the exercise date to October 9, 2023.

On February 18, 2015, the Company reduced the exercise price of an aggregate of 32,000 stock options granted on to Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright, our directors and executive officers, to \$5.75 per share an exercise date to February 18, 2020, with vested immediately.

On February 18, 2015, the Company granted a total of 26,000 stock options to employees and consultants. The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$5.00 per share for a period of ten years from the date of grant. 17,750 stock options vested by March 31, 2015, 2,750 stock options vested on June 30, 2015, 2,750 stock options vested on September 30, 2015 and 2,750 stock options vested on December 31, 2015.

On January 29, 2016, the Company granted a total of 1,310,000 stock options to certain employees. The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$0.52 per share for a period of 7.6 years from the date of grant and vested upon the date of grant.

On January 29, 2016, the Company granted a total of 3,000,000 stock options Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (1,500,000 stock options to each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$0.52 per share for a period of 7.6 years from the date of grant and vested upon the date of grant.

On March 4, 2016, the Company completed the offering and sale of an aggregate of 9,000,000 shares of our common stock the offering included warrants to purchase an aggregate of 4,500,000 shares of our common stock, at an exercise price of \$0.50 per share for a period of two years from the date of issuance.

For the years ended March 31, 2016 and March 31, 2015 the Company has recognized compensation expense of \$2,425,495 and \$4,039,291 respectively, on the stock options granted that vested. The fair value of the unvested shares is \$0 as of March, 2016. The aggregate intrinsic value of these options was \$0 at March 31, 2016. Stock option activity summary covering options is presented in the table below:

|                               | Number<br>of<br>Shares | Weighted-<br>Average<br>Exercise<br>Price | Weighted-<br>Average<br>Remaining<br>Contractual |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|---|--|
|                               |                        |   | (years)  |
| Outstanding at March 31, 2014 | 120,000                | 30.50                                     | 8.5  |
| Granted                       | 347,040                | 7.00                                      | 8.9  |
| Exercised                     | (3,640) S              | 0.50                                      | 9.2  |
| Expired/Forfeited             | (120,000) \$           | -   | 8.2  |
| Outstanding at March 31, 2015 | 343,400                | 7.00                                      | 8.2  |
| Granted                       | 4,310,000              | 0.52                                      | 7.8  |
| Exercised                     | -                      | -   | -  |
| Expired/Forfeited             | - 5                    | -   | -  |
| Outstanding at March 31, 2016 | 4,653,400              | 0.92                                      | 7.7  |
| Exercisable at March 31, 2016 | 4,653,400              | 0.92                                      | 7.7  |
|                               |                        |   |  |

#### Warrants

The following is a summary of the status of all of our warrants as of March 31, 2016 and changes during the period ended on that date:

|  | Number<br>of Warrants | Weighted-<br>Average<br>Exercise<br>Price |
|--|-----------------------|---|
| Outstanding at March 31, 2014          | 166,208 \$            | 26.00                                     |
| Granted                                | 584,985               | 6.50                                      |
| Exercised                              | (290,585)             | (15.50)                                   |
| Cancelled                              | -                     | (15.50)                                   |
| Outstanding at March 31, 2015          | 460,608               | 7.00                                      |
| Granted                                | 4,858,057             | 1.22                                      |
| Exercised                              | (254,763)             | 8.00                                      |
| Cancelled or Expired                   | (75,786)              | 6.00                                      |
| Outstanding at March 31, 2016          | 4,988,116             | 1.39                                      |
| Warrants exercisable at March 31, 2016 | 4,988,116 \$          | 1.39                                      |

The following table summarizes information about stock warrants outstanding and exercisable at March 31, 2016:

# STOCK WARRANTS OUTSTANDING AND EXERCISABLE

|                |                    | Weighted-     |
|----------------|--------------------|---------------|
|                |                    | Average       |
|                | Number of          | Remaining     |
|                | Warrants           | Contractual   |
| Exercise Price | <b>Outstanding</b> | Life in Years |
| \$ 5.00        | 428,629            | 2.02          |
| \$ 6.25        | 6,667              | 3.05          |
| \$ 9.375       | 19,067             | 3.55          |
| \$ 27.50       | 2,326              | 2.07          |
| \$0.50         | 4,500,000          | 1.91          |
|                |                    |               |

The Company agreed to reduce the exercise price of certain existing warrants to \$5.00 per share in consideration for the immediate exercise of the existing warrants by the holders. As consideration, the holders were issued new common stock purchase warrants of the Company to purchase up to a number of shares of our common stock equal to the number of existing warrants exercised by the holders, provided that the exercise price of the new warrants will be \$6.25 per share.

On August 21, 2014, pursuant to a Warrant Amendment Agreement, the Company issued an aggregate of 196,589 shares of the Company s common stock upon the exercise of Existing Warrants at an exercise price of \$5.00 per share for aggregate gross proceeds of \$982,945. Simultaneously, the Company issued new warrants to purchase an aggregate of 196,589 shares of our common stock with a term of 5 years and exercise price of \$6.25 per warrant share. The Company recorded this issuance in additional paid-in capital.

On October 7, 2014, pursuant to a Warrant Amendment Agreement, the Company issued an aggregate of 93,996 shares of the Company s common stock upon exercise of the Existing Warrants at an exercise price of \$5.00 per share for aggregate gross proceeds of \$469,980. Simultaneously, the Company issued new warrants to purchase an aggregate of 93,996 shares of our common stock with a term of 5 years and exercise price of \$6.25 per warrant share. The Company recorded this issuance in additional paid-in capital.

On October 22, 2014, the Company entered into a master lease agreement with Veterans Capital Fund, LLC (the Lessor ) for the secured lease line of credit financing in an amount not to exceed \$600,000. The lease is expected to be secured by three new alkaline generating electrolysis system machines. Our wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline 88, LLC, and Water Engineering Solutions, LLC acted as co-lessees. Water Engineering Solutions, LLC is an entity that is controlled and owned by our President, Chief Executive Officer, director and major stockholder, Steven P. Nickolas, and our Vice-President, Secretary, Treasurer and director, Richard A. Wright. Pursuant to the master lease agreement, the Lessor agreed to lease to us the equipment described in any equipment schedule signed by us and approved by the Lessor. It is expected that any lease under the master lease agreement will be structured for a three-year lease term with fixed monthly lease rental payments based on a monthly lease rate factor of 3.4667% of the Lessor s capital cost. In connection with the entering into the master lease agreement, the Company also entered into a warrant agreement with the Lessor, pursuant to which the Company agreed to issue a warrant to purchase 72,000 shares of our common stock to the Lessor and/or its affiliates at an exercise price of \$6.25 per share for a period of five years. 18,000 shares vested.

On February 25, 2015, the Company amended the master lease agreement with Veterans Capital Fund, LLC for the increase in the secured lease line of credit financing to an amount not to exceed \$800,000. The lease was secured by new alkaline generating electrolysis system machines by our wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline 88, LLC, and Water Engineering Solutions, LLC. Water Engineering Solutions, LLC is an entity that is controlled and owned by our President, Chief Executive Officer, director and major stockholder, Steven P. Nickolas, and our Vice-President, Secretary, Treasurer and director, Richard A. Wright. Pursuant to the master lease agreement, the Lessor agreed to lease to us the equipment described in any equipment schedule signed by us and approved by the Lessor. It is expected that any lease under the master lease agreement will be structured for a three-year lease term with fixed monthly lease rental payments based on a monthly lease rate factor of 3.4667% of the Lessor s capital cost. In connection with the entering into the master lease agreement, the Company entered into a warrant agreement with the Lessor, pursuant to which the Company agreed to cancel the previous issued warrant for 72,000 and issue a warrant to purchase 102,000 shares of our common stock to the Lessor and/or its affiliates at an exercise price of \$5.00 per share for a period of five years. 18,000 shares vested on October 22, 2014, 13,316 shares on October 28, 2014, 13,606 shares on December 22, 2014, 6,945 shares on February 3, 2015 and 15,799 shares on March 5, 2015. The remaining 18,105 shares will vest on a pro rata basis according to any mounts the Lessor funds pursuant to any lease schedules under the master lease agreement, provided that if we draw on 90% or more of the total lease line under the master lease agreement, then all such shares will be deemed to be vested. The Company recorded the bifurcated value of \$309,028 of the warrants issued as additional paid in capital, the value was determine using a Black-Scholes, a level 3 valuation measure.

On June 29, 2015 the Company entered into a \$50,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 14,286 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 Debt with Conversion and Other Options and determined that a discount of \$50,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of March 31, 2016 \$50,000 was converted into 88,912 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On July 1, 2015 the Company entered into a \$25,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 Debt with Conversion and Other Options and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided

and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On July 1, 2015 the Company entered into a \$25,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On July 1, 2015 the Company entered into a \$25,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On July 7, 2015 the Company entered into a \$25,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On July 13, 2015 the Company entered into a \$25,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On July 17, 2015 the Company entered into a \$25,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On September 28, 2015 the Company entered into a \$75,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had a 15% annual interest rate, 7-month term and rights to 32,000 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share and 10,000 shares of restricted stock. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$75,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 7-month term of the note. As of March 31, 2016 \$75,000 was converted into 270,000 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On October 2, 2015 the Company entered into a convertible promissory note for \$10,000 that was convertible into common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of March 31, 2016 \$10,000 was converted into 17,782 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On October 2, 2015 the Company entered into a convertible promissory note for \$25,000 that was convertible into common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and

rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 Debt with Conversion and Other Options and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On October 5, 2015 the Company entered into a convertible promissory note for \$25,000 that was convertible into common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 Debt with Conversion and Other Options and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On November 13, 2015 the Company entered into a convertible promissory note for \$50,000 that was convertible into common stock at \$3.50 per share. The convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 14,286 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 Debt with Conversion and Other Options and determined that a discount of \$50,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. On December 16, 2015 the note was paid in full and the Company paid a \$5,000 pre-payment penalty which the Company changed to interest expense and fully amortized the \$50,000 discount.

The fair value of the warrants granted during the year ended March 31, 2016 was estimated at the date of agreement using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model and a level 3 valuation measure, with the following assumptions:

| Market value of stock on purchase date | \$<br>3.75 | to    | \$<br>7.10 |
|--|------------|-------|------------|
| Risk-free interest rate                | .26%       | to    | 1.42%      |
| Dividend yield                         |            | 0.00% |            |
| Volatility factor                      | 116%       | to    | 161%       |
| Weighted average expected life (years) |            | 2     |            |

#### NOTE 10 RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

On October 31, 2014, the Company amended the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan to, among other things, to increase the number of shares of stock of the Company available for the grant of awards under the plan from 20,000,000 shares to 35,000,000 shares.

On October 31, 2014, the Company reduced the exercise price of an aggregate of 120,000 stock options granted to Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright, our directors and executive officers, to \$7.50 per share as noted below:

|                    |                   |                     | <b>New Exercise</b> |                        |                        |
|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
|                    |                   | <b>Old Exercise</b> | Price per           |                        | <b>Number of Stock</b> |
| Name of Optionee   | <b>Grant Date</b> | Price per Share     | Share               | <b>Expiration Date</b> | <b>Options</b>         |
| Steven P. Nickolas | October 9, 2013   | \$30.25             | \$7.50              | October 9, 2023        | 60,000                 |
| Richard A. Wright  | October 9, 2013   | \$30.25             | \$7.50              | October 9, 2023        | 60,000                 |

On May 21, 2014, the Company granted a total of 120,000 stock options Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (60,000 stock options to each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$7.275 per share for a period of ten years from the date of grant. 60,000 stock options vested upon the date of grant and 60,000 stock options will vest on November 21, 2014.

On October 9, 2013, the Company granted a total of 120,000 stock options to Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (60,000 stock options to each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$30.25 per share for a period of ten years from the date of grant. For each individual, the stock options vest as follows: (i) 20,000 upon the date of grant; and (ii) 10,000 per quarter until fully vested.

On October 8, 2013, the Company issued a total of 20,000,000 shares of non-convertible Series A Preferred Stock to Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (10,000,000 shares to each), our directors and executive officers, in consideration for the past services, at a deemed value of \$0.001 per share. We valued these shares based on the cost considering the time and average billing rate of these individuals and recorded a \$20,000 stock compensation cost for the year ended March 31, 2014.

On January 29, 2016, the Company granted a total of 3,000,000 stock options Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (1,500,000 stock options to each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$0.52 per share for a period of 7.6 years from the date of grant and vested upon the date of grant.

Effective March 31, 2016, the Company issued a total of 3,000,000 shares of our Series C Preferred Stock to Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (1,500,000 shares to each), our directors and executive officers, pursuant to their employment agreements dated effective March 1, 2016.

On April 2, 2014, the Company entered into a sale-leaseback transaction with Water Engineering Solutions LLC, an entity that is controlled and owned by an officer, director and shareholder, for specialized equipment with an original cost of \$208,773 and that was acquired in August 2013. The Company received proceeds of \$188,000 in April 2014. The lease terms are 60 monthly payments of \$3,812, payable 30 days after installation of the equipment and a purchase option of \$1.00. The Company recorded a loss on sales leaseback of \$20,773.

As of March 31, 2014, the Company had \$0 in equipment deposits with an entity that is controlled and owned by an officer, director and shareholder of the Company. During the year ended March 31, 2014, the Company provided \$201,900 of deposits on equipment used to produce our alkaline water to an entity that is controlled and owned by an officer, director and shareholder of the Company. During the month of March 2014, these funds were returned to the Company.

During the year ended March 31, 2014 the Company acquired equipment of \$208,773 and \$10,287 from an entity that is controlled and majority-owned by an officer, director and shareholder of the Company.

On January 17, 2014 the Company entered into an equipment lease with Water Engineering Solutions LLC, an entity that is controlled and owned by an officer, director and shareholder, for specialized equipment used to make our alkaline water totaling \$190,756 and agreed to a 60-month term at \$2,512 per month and a final payment of \$28,585. On February 12, 2014 the Company amended this lease, as noted above, with equipment deposits of \$201,900 being returned to the Company. In addition, the lease terms were amended to 60 monthly payments of \$3,864, payable 30 days after installation of the equipment and a purchase option of \$1.00.

On August 1, 2013, the Company entered into a 3-year sub-lease agreement requiring a monthly payment of \$2,085 for office space in Scottsdale, Arizona, with a basic monthly lease increase of 8% and 7% on each anniversary date. The Company or the landlord can cancel the lease with 30 days' notice. The sub-lessor is an entity owned by the Company's Chief Executive Officer and President.

Under the terms of the exclusive manufacturing agreement entered into on April 15, 2013 between the Company and Water Engineering Solutions LLC, a related party, the Company paid \$690,000 on May 1 2014 for specialized equipment used in the production of our alkaline water. Under this agreement, the Company paid deposits on equipment as follows: May 1, 2014 \$690,000, June 27, 2014 \$21,500, July 1, 2014 \$115,000, August 7, 2014 \$10,000, August 5, 2014 \$5,000, August 19, 2014 \$2,000, August 22, 2014 \$100,000, October 14, 2014 \$70,000, November 4, 2014 \$7,676 and November 7, 2014 \$5,002. The Company received equipment valued at \$278,769 and reduced the deposit on equipment. During the year ended March 31, 2016 the company made purchased equipment of \$312,500 to Water Engineering Solutions. Water Engineering Solutions, LLC is an entity that is controlled and majority owned by Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright for the production of our alkaline water.

On March 30, 2016, the Company entered into an employment agreement dated effective March 1, 2016 with Steven P. Nickolas, our president, chief executive officer and director, pursuant to which Mr. Nickolas agreed to perform such duties as are regularly and customarily performed by the president and chief executive officer of a corporation, and any other duties consistent with Mr. Nickolas's position in our company. Pursuant to the terms of the employment agreement, the Company have agreed to (i) pay Mr. Nickolas \$15,000 per month or such other amount as may be determined by our board of directors from time to time; and (ii) issue to Mr. Nickolas 1,500,000 shares of our Series C Preferred Stock (issued effective as of March 31, 2016). The Company also agreed that each of the following events constitute a "Negotiated Trigger Event" as defined in the Certificate of Designation for the Series C Preferred Stock: (i) the occurrence of a change of control event; (ii) the death of Mr. Nickolas; and (iii) the termination of the employment agreement for any reason.

In addition, the Company may (i) grant awards under our 2013 equity incentive plan to Mr. Nickolas from time to time and (ii) pay to Mr. Nickolas an annual discretionary performance bonus in an amount to be determined by our board of directors in its sole discretion. Mr. Nickolas will also be eligible to participate in other bonus programs offered by our company to our senior staff from time to time.

In addition, Mr. Nickolas will be entitled to participate in all of our employee benefit plans provided by our company to our senior officers. If the Company does not provide such plans at any time, the Company agreed to reimburse Mr. Nickolas for the reasonable cost of any such plans obtained privately. The Company also agreed to (i) provide Mr. Nickolas with vehicle leased in our company's name, with lease payments not exceeding \$700/month or such other amount as may be determined by our board of directors; (ii) pay Mr. Nickolas an allowance of \$5,000 per month or such other amount as may be determined by our board of directors, which may be used by Mr. Nickolas as he sees fit, including without limitation, the funding of non-qualified retirement plans; (iii) reimburse Mr. Nickolas for any expenses that he incurs in connection with his duties under his employment agreement. Mr. Nickolas will be entitled in each year to five weeks' paid vacation, in addition to weekends and statutory holidays, to be taken in installments of no more than three consecutive weeks of paid time off.

The initial term of the employment agreement is three years and, on the third anniversary of the effective date of the employment and on each annual anniversary date thereafter, the term of the employment agreement will automatically be extended by one additional year unless either party gives 90 days' written notice to the other of its intention not to renew the employment agreement.

If, within 90 days of the occurrence of a change of control event, Mr. Nickolas resigns from his employment relationship with our company or our company terminates his employment agreement for any reason other than for just cause, then the Company agreed to pay Mr. Nickolas severance in an amount equal to the following: 36 months' salary plus an amount, if any, equal to the following: one month's salary multiplied by the number of calendar years, starting on the effective date of the employment agreement, that Mr. Nickolas is employed by our company under his employment agreement.

The Company may terminate Mr. Nickolas's employment at any time for other than just cause by delivering to Mr. Nickolas written notice of termination. In such a case, the Company agreed to pay Mr. Nickolas severance in an amount equal to the following: 36 months' salary plus an amount, if any, equal to the following: one month's salary multiplied by the number of calendar years, starting on the effective date of the employment, that Mr. Nickolas is employed by our company under his employment agreement.

Subject to applicable employment laws or similar legislation, the Company may terminate Mr. Nickolas's employment in the event he has been unable to perform his duties for a period of eight consecutive months or a cumulative period of 12 months in any consecutive 24 month period, because of a physical or mental disability. Mr. Nickolas's employment will automatically terminate on his death. In the event Mr. Nickolas's employment with our company terminates by reason of Mr. Nickolas's death or disability, then upon and immediately effective on the date of termination the Company agreed to promptly pay and provide Mr. Nickolas (or in the event of Mr. Nickolas's death,

Mr. Nickolas's estate); any unpaid salary and any outstanding and accrued regular and special vacation pay through the date of termination; reimbursement for any unreimbursed expenses incurred through to the date of termination; and any outstanding amounts due under any awards which will be dealt with in accordance with our 2013 equity incentive plan and award agreement. In the event Mr. Nickolas's employment is terminated due to a disability, the Company agreed to pay to Mr. Nickolas the severance referred to above.

The Company may terminate Mr. Nickolas's employment for just cause at any time by delivering to Mr. Nickolas written notice of termination. In the event that Mr. Nickolas's employment with our company is terminated by our company for just cause, Mr. Nickolas will not be entitled to any additional payments or benefits (except as otherwise provided in his employment agreement), other than for amounts due and owing to Mr. Nickolas by our company as of the date of termination, except for any awards under our 2013 equity incentive plan will be dealt with in accordance with the plan and award agreement.

Provided that Mr. Nickolas has acted within the scope of his authority, the Company agreed to indemnify and save harmless Mr. Nickolas (including his heirs and legal representatives) against any and all costs, claims and expenses (including any amounts paid to settle any actions or satisfy any judgments) which: he may suffer or incur by reason of any matter or thing which he may in good faith do or have done or caused to be done as an employee, officer or director of our company, any of its subsidiaries or of any of their respective affiliates; or was reasonably incurred by him in respect of any civil, criminal or administrative action or proceeding to which he is made a party by reason of being or having been an employee, officer or director of our company, any of its subsidiaries or of any of their respective affiliates; provided that, the foregoing indemnification will apply only if: he acted honestly and in good faith with a view to the best interests of our company, any of its subsidiaries or any of their respective affiliates; and in the case of a criminal or administrative action or proceeding that is enforced by a monetary penalty, he had reasonable grounds for believing that his conduct was lawful.

Mr. Nickolas agreed to indemnify and save harmless our company against, and agree to hold it harmless from, any and all damages, injuries, claims, demands, actions, liability, costs and expenses (including reasonable legal fees) incurred or made against our company arising from or connected with the performance or non-performance of his employment by him or the beach of any warranty, representation or covenant herein by him, other than claims by him pursuant to his employment agreement.

If and to the extent the Company maintain directors' and officers' liability insurance for the protection of our executives in connection with acts and omissions occurring during their employment with our company, the Company agreed that Mr. Nickolas will be included as an officer and director who is covered by such policy on a basis no less favorable than made available to other executives of our company.

#### Employment Agreement with Richard A. Wright

On March 30, 2016, the Company entered into an employment agreement dated effective March 1, 2016 with Richard A. Wright, our vice-president, secretary, treasurer and director, pursuant to which Mr. Wright agreed to perform such duties as are regularly and customarily performed by the vice president, secretary and treasurer of a corporation, and any other duties consistent with Mr. Wright's position in our company. Pursuant to the terms of the employment agreement, the Company have agreed to (i) pay Mr. Wright \$14,000 per month or such other amount as may be determined by our board of directors from time to time; and (ii) issue to Mr. Wright 1,500,000 shares of our Series C Preferred Stock (issued effective as of March 31, 2016). The Company also agreed that each of the following events constitute a "Negotiated Trigger Event" as defined in the Certificate of Designation for the Series C Preferred Stock: (i) the occurrence of a change of control event; (ii) the death of Mr. Wright; and (iii) the termination of the employment agreement for any reason.

In addition, the Company may (i) grant awards under our 2013 equity incentive plan to Mr. Wright from time to time and (ii) pay to Mr. Wright an annual discretionary performance bonus in an amount to be determined by our board of directors in its sole discretion. Mr. Wright will also be eligible to participate in other bonus programs offered by our company to our senior staff from time to time.

In addition, Mr. Wright will be entitled to participate in all of our employee benefit plans provided by our company to our senior officers. If the Company do not provide such plans at any time, the Company agreed to reimburse Mr. Wright for the reasonable cost of any such plans obtained privately. The Company also agreed to (i) provide Mr.

Wright with vehicle leased in our company's name, with lease payments not exceeding \$700/month or such other amount as may be determined by our board of directors; (ii) pay Mr. Wright an allowance of \$5,000 per month or such other amount as may be determined by our board of directors, which may be used by Mr. Wright as he sees fit, including without limitation, the funding of non-qualified retirement plans; (iii) reimburse Mr. Wright for any expenses that he incurs in connection with his duties under his employment agreement. Mr. Wright will be entitled in each year to five weeks' paid vacation, in addition to weekends and statutory holidays, to be taken in installments of no more than three consecutive weeks of paid time off.

The initial term of the employment agreement is three years and, on the third anniversary of the effective date of the employment and on each annual anniversary date thereafter, the term of the employment agreement will automatically be extended by one additional year unless either party gives 90 days' written notice to the other of its intention not to renew the employment agreement.

If, within 90 days of the occurrence of a change of control event, Mr. Wright resigns from his employment relationship with our company or our company terminates his employment agreement for any reason other than for just cause, then the Company agreed to pay Mr. Wright severance in an amount equal to the following: 36 months' salary plus an amount, if any, equal to the following: one month's salary multiplied by the number of calendar years, starting on the effective date of the employment agreement, that Mr. Wright is employed by our company under his employment agreement.

The Company may terminate Mr. Wright's employment at any time for other than just cause by delivering to Mr. Wright written notice of termination. In such a case, the Company agreed to pay Mr. Wright severance in an amount equal to the following: 36 months' salary plus an amount, if any, equal to the following: one month's salary multiplied by the number of calendar years, starting on the effective date of the employment, that Mr. Wright is employed by our company under his employment agreement.

Subject to applicable employment laws or similar legislation, the Company may terminate Mr. Wright's employment in the event he has been unable to perform his duties for a period of eight consecutive months or a cumulative period of 12 months in any consecutive 24 month period, because of a physical or mental disability. Mr. Wright's employment will automatically terminate on his death. In the event Mr. Wright's employment with our company terminates by reason of Mr. Wright's death or disability, then upon and immediately effective on the date of termination the Company agreed to promptly pay and provide Mr. Wright (or in the event of Mr. Wright's death, Mr. Wright's estate); any unpaid salary and any outstanding and accrued regular and special vacation pay through the date of termination; reimbursement for any unreimbursed expenses incurred through to the date of termination; and any outstanding amounts due under any awards which will be dealt with in accordance with our 2013 equity incentive plan and the award agreement. In the event Mr. Wright's employment is terminated due to a disability, the Company agreed to pay to Mr. Wright the severance referred to above.

The Company may terminate Mr. Wright's employment for just cause at any time by delivering to Mr. Wright written notice of termination. In the event that Mr. Wright's employment with our company is terminated by our company for just cause, Mr. Wright will not be entitled to any additional payments or benefits (except as otherwise provided in his employment agreement), other than for amounts due and owing to Mr. Wright by our company as of the date of termination, except for any awards under our 2013 equity incentive plan will be dealt with in accordance with the plan and award agreement.

Provided that Mr. Wright has acted within the scope of his authority, the Company agreed to indemnify and save harmless Mr. Wright (including his heirs and legal representatives) against any and all costs, claims and expenses (including any amounts paid to settle any actions or satisfy any judgments) which: he may suffer or incur by reason of any matter or thing which he may in good faith do or have done or caused to be done as an employee, officer or director of our company, any of its subsidiaries or of any of their respective affiliates; or was reasonably incurred by him in respect of any civil, criminal or administrative action or proceeding to which he is made a party by reason of being or having been an employee, officer or director of our company, any of its subsidiaries or of any of their respective affiliates; provided that, the foregoing indemnification will apply only if: he acted honestly and in good faith with a view to the best interests of our company, any of its subsidiaries or any of their respective affiliates; and in the case of a criminal or administrative action or proceeding that is enforced by a monetary penalty, he had reasonable grounds for believing that his conduct was lawful.

Mr. Wright agreed to indemnify and save harmless our company against, and agree to hold it harmless from, any and all damages, injuries, claims, demands, actions, liability, costs and expenses (including reasonable legal fees) incurred

or made against our company arising from or connected with the performance or non-performance of his employment by him or the beach of any warranty, representation or covenant herein by him, other than claims by him pursuant to his employment agreement.

If and to the extent the Company maintain directors and officers liability insurance for the protection of our executives in connection with acts and omissions occurring during their employment with our company, the Company agreed that Mr. Wright will be included as an officer and director who is covered by such policy on a basis no less favorable than made available to other executives of our company.

#### NOTE 11 INCOME TAXES

Deferred income taxes reflect the net tax effects of temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the amounts used for income tax purposes. The Company recorded the valuation allowance due to the uncertainty of future realization of federal and state net operating loss carryforwards. The deferred income tax assets are comprised of the following at March 31:

|                             | <u>2016</u>        | <u>2015</u> |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|-------------|
| Deferred income tax assets: | \$<br>2,100,000 \$ | 1,270,000   |
| Valuation allowance         | (2,100,000)        | (1,270,000) |
| Net total                   | \$<br>- \$         | -           |

At March 31, 2016, the Company had net operating loss carryforwards of approximately \$7,790,000 and net operating loss carryforwards expire in 2023 through 2034.

The valuation allowance was increased by \$830,000 during the year ended March 31, 2016. The current income tax benefit of \$830,000 and \$1,270,000 generated for the years ended March 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively, was offset by an equal increase in the valuation allowance. The valuation allowance was increased due to uncertainties as to the Company s ability to generate sufficient taxable income to utilize the net operating loss carryforwards and other deferred income tax items.

The Company recognizes interest and penalties related to uncertain tax positions in general and administrative expense. As of March 31, 2016, the Company has no unrecognized uncertain tax positions, including interest and penalties

#### NOTE 12 COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

#### <u>Leases</u>

The Company has long-term leases for its offices under cancelable operating leases from August 1, 2013 through September 30, 2017. At March 31, 2016, future minimum contractual obligations were as follows:

|                               | <b>Facilities</b> | <b>Equipment</b> |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Year ending March 31, 2017    | \$<br>87,648      | \$<br>10,436     |
| Year ending March 31, 2018    | 42,000            | 4,348            |
| Total Minimum Lease Payments: | \$<br>129,648     | \$<br>14,784     |

On October 3, 2014, the Company entered into a 3-year sub-lease agreement requiring a monthly payment of \$5,000 for office space in Scottsdale, Arizona, with a basic monthly lease increase to \$6,000 per month in second year of the lease and to \$7,000 per month in the third year of the lease. The Company shall have the option to extend this lease for one (1) additional three (3) year term for increased monthly rent.

On August 1, 2013 the Company entered into a 3-year sub-lease agreement requiring a monthly payment of \$2,085 for office space in Scottsdale, Arizona, with a basic monthly lease increase of 8% and 7% on each anniversary date. The Company or the landlord can cancel the lease with 30 days notice. The sub-lessor is an entity owned by the Company s Chief Executive Officer and President.

On August 2, 2013 the Company entered into a 4-year lease agreement for certain office equipment requiring a monthly payment of \$870.

#### NOTE 13 CAPITAL LEASE

On January 17, 2014, the Company entered into an equipment lease with Water Engineering Solutions LLC, an entity that is controlled and owned by an officer, director and shareholder, for specialized equipment used to make our alkaline water with a stated value of \$190,756 and agreed to a 60 month term at \$3,864 per month and a purchase option of \$1 which commenced on May 1, 2014.

On April 2, 2014, the Company entered into a capital lease agreement with Water Engineering Solutions LLC, an entity that is controlled and owned by an officer, director and shareholder, for specialized equipment used to make our alkaline water with a stated value of \$188,000, terms of 60 monthly payments of \$3,812, payable 30 days after installation of the equipment and a purchase option of \$1.00 which commenced on July 1, 2014.

On October 22, 2014 the Company agreed to purchase the specialized equipment use to make our alkaline water that were previously reflected as capital lease on January 17, 2014 and April 2, 2014. During the quarter ended December 31, 2014, the Company purchased these capital leases of specialized equipment for \$347,161, the lease liability on the date of purchase.

On October 22, 2014, the Company entered into a master lease agreement with Veterans Capital Fund, LLC (the Lessor ) for the secured lease line of credit financing in an amount not to exceed \$600,000. The lease is expected to be secured by three new alkaline generating electrolysis system machines. Our wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline 88, LLC, and Water Engineering Solutions, LLC acted as co-lessees. Water Engineering Solutions, LLC is an entity that is controlled and owned by our President, Chief Executive Officer, director and major stockholder, Steven P. Nickolas, and our Vice-President, Secretary, Treasurer and director, Richard A. Wright. Pursuant to the master lease agreement, the Lessor agreed to lease to us the equipment described in any equipment schedule signed by us and approved by the Lessor. It is expected that any lease under the master lease agreement will be structured for a three year lease term with fixed monthly lease rental payments based on a monthly lease rate factor of 3.4667% of the Lessor s capital cost. In connection with the entering into the master lease agreement, the Company also entered into a warrant agreement with the Lessor, pursuant to which the Company agreed to issue a warrant to purchase72,000 shares of our common stock to the Lessor and/or its affiliates at an exercise price of \$6. 25 per share for a period of five years, 18,000 shares vested.

On February 25, 2015, the Company amended the master lease agreement with Veterans Capital Fund, LLC for the increase in the secured lease line of credit financing to an amount not to exceed \$800,000. The lease was secured by new alkaline generating electrolysis system machines by our wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline 88, LLC, and Water Engineering Solutions, LLC. Water Engineering Solutions, LLC is an entity that is controlled and owned by our President, Chief Executive Officer, director and major stockholder, Steven P. Nickolas, and our Vice-President, Secretary, Treasurer and director, Richard A. Wright. Pursuant to the master lease agreement, the Lessor agreed to lease to us the equipment described in any equipment schedule signed by us and approved by the Lessor. It is expected that any lease under the master lease agreement will be structured for a three year lease term with fixed monthly lease rental payments based on a monthly lease rate factor of 3.4667% of the Lessor s capital cost. In connection with the entering into the master lease agreement, the Company entered into a warrant agreement with the Lessor, pursuant to which the Company agreed to cancel the previous issued warrant for 72,000 and issue a warrant to purchase 102,000 shares of our common stock to the Lessor and/or its affiliates at an exercise price of \$5.00 per share for a period of

five years. 18,000 shares vested on October 22, 2014, 13,316 shares on October 28, 2014, 13,606 shares on December 22, 2014, 6,945 shares on February 3, 2015 and 15,799 shares on March 5, 2015. The remaining 18,105 shares will vest on a pro rata basis according to any mounts the Lessor funds pursuant to any lease schedules under the master lease agreement, provided that if the Company draws on 90% or more of the total lease line under the master lease agreement, then all such shares will be deemed to be vested. The Company recorded the bifurcated value of \$309,028 of the warrants issued as additional paid in capital, the value was determine using a Black-Scholes, a level 3 valuation measure.

During the year ended March 31, 2015 the Company agreed to lease the specialized equipment used to make our alkaline water with a value of \$735,781 under the above Master Lease agreement. The Company evaluated this lease under ASC 840-30 Leases-Capital Leases and concluded that these lease where a capital asset.

#### NOTE 14 NOTES PAYABLE

On May 11, 2015, the Company entered into a securities purchase agreement with Assurance Funding Solutions LLC, pursuant to which the Company issued a secured term note of our company in the aggregate principal amount of \$250,000, together with 20,000 shares of our common stock, in consideration for \$250,000. The secured term note bears interest at the rate of 15% per annum and matures on May 11, 2016. The Company may prepay the note by paying the holder 110% of the principal amount outstanding together with accrued but unpaid interest thereon, provided that the Company provide written notice to the holder at least 30 days prior to the date of prepayment. Pursuant to the securities purchase agreement, the Company paid Assurance Funding Solutions LLC \$10,000 for legal fees incurred by it and granted it piggyback registration rights. In connection with the securities purchase agreement, the Company also entered into a general security agreement dated May 11, 2015 with Assurance Funding Solutions LLC. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20-30 *Debt liability and equity component* determine that a Debt Discount of \$79,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of March 31, 2016, \$13.167 was unamortized and amortization of debt discount for the year was \$65,833.

On August 19, 2015, the Company entered into a securities purchase agreement pursuant to which the Company issued a secured term note of our company in the aggregate principal amount of \$240,000, together with 20,000 shares of our common stock, in consideration for \$200,000. The secured term note bears requires monthly payments of \$20,000 per month, along with a final payment due on August 20, 2016.

On November 30, 2015, the Company entered into a loan agreement with a lender, whereby the lender loaned \$750,000 to the company in exchange for a non-negotiable promissory note in the principal amount of \$750,000 which bears interest at the rate of 15% per annum and matures on the date that is 60 days after November 30, 2015. On January 25, 2016 the note term was extended to March 31, 2016. This loan was repaid on March 4, 2016.

The loan agreement provides that the Company s obligations to the lender will be secured by an escrow agreement, pursuant to which the Company deposited into escrow a certificate representing \$1.5 million worth of shares of its common stock. Pursuant to the escrow agreement, the Company deposited a share certificate representing 526,316 shares of the Company common stock valued at \$1.5 million. Pursuant to the escrow agreement, (i) in the event that there is any event of default that is not cured in accordance with the loan agreement, the escrow agent is to deliver the certificate to the lender and (ii) in the event that the company repays the loan pursuant to the loan agreement and there is no event of default that is not cured in accordance with the loan agreement at the time of repayment, the escrow agent is to deliver the certificate to the transfer agent of our company and request the transfer agent to cancel the escrowed shares.

Pursuant to the loan agreement, the Company also granted piggyback registration rights to the lender with respect to the escrowed shares.

As of January 25, 2016, the Company entered into a loan agreement with a lender, whereby the Lender loaned \$750,000 to our company in exchange for a non-negotiable promissory note in the principal amount of \$750,000. The Note bears interest at the rate of 15% per annum and matures on March 31, 2016. This loan was repaid on March 4, 2016.

The loan agreement provides that our obligations to the Lender will be secured by an escrow agreement, pursuant to which the Company will deposit into escrow a certificate representing 1,500,000 shares of our common stock. As of January 25, 2016, the Company entered into an escrow agreement with the Lender and an escrow agent. Pursuant to the escrow agreement, the Company deposited a share certificate representing the escrowed shares with the escrow

agent. Pursuant to the escrow agreement, (i) in the event that there is any event of default that is not cured in accordance with the loan agreement, the escrow agent is to deliver the certificate to the Lender and (ii) in the event that our company repays the loan pursuant to the Loan Agreement and there is no event of default that is not cured in accordance with the loan agreement at the time of repayment, the escrow agent is to deliver the Certificate to the transfer agent of our company and request the transfer agent to cancel the escrowed shares.

Pursuant to the loan agreement, the Company also granted piggyback registration rights to the Lender with respect to the escrowed shares.

#### NOTE 15 - CONVERTIBLE NOTES PAYABLE

On June 29, 2015 the Company entered into a \$50,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 14,286 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$50,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of March 31, 2016 \$50,000 was converted into 88,912 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On July 1, 2015 the Company entered into a \$25,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of December 31, 2015 \$12,500 was amortized. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On July 1, 2015 the Company entered into a \$25,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of December 31, 2015 \$12,500 was amortized. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On July 1, 2015 the Company entered into a \$25,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of December 31, 2015, 12,500 was amortized. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On July 7, 2015 the Company entered into a \$25,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of December 31, 2015 \$12,500 was amortized. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On July 13, 2015 the Company entered into a \$25,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of December 31, 2015 \$12,500 was amortized.

As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On July 17, 2015 the Company entered into a \$25,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of December 31, 2015 \$12,500 was amortized. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On September 28, 2015 the Company entered into a \$75,000 Convertible promissory note was convertible into Common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had a 15% annual interest rate, 7-month term and rights to 32,000 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share and 10,000 shares of restricted stock. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$75,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 7-month term of the note. As of December 31, 2015 \$18,750 was amortized. As of March 31, 2016 \$75,000 was converted into 270,000 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On October 5, 2015 the Company entered into a convertible promissory note for \$25,000 that was convertible into common stock at \$3.50 per share. The Convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 7,143 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$25,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of March 31, 2016 \$25,000 was converted into 44,455 shares of common stock and the discount was fully amortized.

On November 13, 2015 the Company entered into a convertible promissory note for \$50,000 that was convertible into common stock at \$3.50 per share. The convertible promissory note had an 8% annual interest rate, 1-year term and rights to 14,286 warrants with a two year term an exercise price of \$5.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20 "Debt with Conversion and Other Options" and determined that a discount of \$50,000 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. On December 16, 2015 the note was paid in full and the Company paid a \$5,000 pre-payment penalty which the Company changed to interest expense and fully amortized the \$50,000 discount.

On March 31, 2016, the Company entered into a promissory note and warrant exchange agreement (the "March Exchange Agreement") with six holders of our promissory notes (each, a "Note") in the aggregate principal amount of \$310,000 and warrants (each, a "March Warrant") to purchase an aggregate of 88,563 shares of our common stock, whereby the Company exchanged the holders' Notes and March Warrants, for no additional consideration, for an aggregate of 551,246 shares of our common stock (the "March Exchange"), and following the March Exchange, the Notes and March Warrants were automatically cancelled and terminated and the holders have no further rights pursuant to the Notes, March Warrants and any agreement or instrument pursuant to which such Notes or March Warrants were issued.

#### **NOTE 16 – SUBSEQUENT EVENTS**

On April 1, 2016, the Company issued 5,000 common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$1.65 per share.

On April 1, 201, the Company issued 12,500 common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$1.65 per share.

On of May 16, 2016, the Company entered into a warrant exchange agreement (the "May Exchange Agreement") with six holders of our warrants (each, a "May Warrant") to purchase an aggregate of 163,202 shares of our common stock, whereby the Company exchanged the holders' May Warrants, for no additional consideration, for an aggregate of 163,202 shares of our common stock (the "May Exchange"), and following the May Exchange, the May Warrants were automatically cancelled and terminated and the holders have no further rights pursuant to the May Warrants and any agreement or instrument pursuant to which such May Warrants were issued.

On June 1, 2016, the Company issued 65,000 common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$1.75 per share.

On June 10, 2016, the Company entered into loan agreements with five lenders, pursuant to which the Company issued promissory notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$260,000 in exchange for the loan in the amount of \$260,000. The promissory notes bear interest at the rate of 10% per annum, payable quarterly. Payment of the principal and interest is due and payable on or before June 10, 2017. The lenders have the option to convert the amount due under the promissory notes into shares of our common stock at a conversion price of \$1.00 per share.

On June 14, 2016, pursuant to the May Exchange Agreement, the Company issued an aggregate of 163,202 shares of our common stock upon exchange of the above mentioned May Warrants valued at the market value on that date of \$1.98 per share.

On July 6, 2016, the Company issued an aggregate of 425,000 shares of our common stock to three investors in a private placement, at a purchase price of \$1.00 per share for gross proceeds of \$425,000.

- 26 -

# ITEM 9. CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE

None.

#### ITEM 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES

#### **Disclosure Controls and Procedures**

We maintain disclosure controls and procedures , as that term is defined in Rule 13a-15(e), promulgated by the Securities and Exchange Commission pursuant to the *Securities Exchange Act of 1934*, as amended. Disclosure controls and procedures include controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in our company s reports filed under the *Securities Exchange Act of 1934* is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the Securities and Exchange Commission s rules and forms, and that such information is accumulated and communicated to our management, including our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure.

As required by paragraph (b) of Rules 13a-15 under the *Securities Exchange Act of 1934*, our management, with the participation of our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer, evaluated our company s disclosure controls and procedures as of the end of the period covered by this annual report on Form 10-K. Based on this evaluation, our management concluded that as of the end of the period covered by this annual report on Form 10-K, our disclosure controls and procedures were effective.

#### **Internal Control over Financial Reporting**

#### Management s Annual Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting

Our management, including our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer, is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Rule 13a-15(f) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934).

Our management, with the participation of our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer, evaluated the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting as of March 31, 2016. Our management s evaluation of our internal control over financial reporting was based on the framework in Internal Control Integrated Framework, issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission. Based on this evaluation, our management concluded that our internal control over financial reporting was effective as of March 31, 2016 and that there were no material weaknesses in our internal control over financial reporting.

A material weakness is a deficiency or a combination of control deficiencies in internal control over financial reporting such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of our annual or interim financial statements will not be prevented or detected on a timely basis.

#### Limitations on Effectiveness of Controls

Our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer do not expect that our disclosure controls or our internal control over financial reporting will prevent all errors and all fraud. A control system, no matter how well conceived and operated, can provide only reasonable, not absolute, assurance that the objectives of the control system are met. Further, the design of a control system must reflect the fact that there are resource constraints, and the benefits of controls must be considered relative to their costs. Because of the inherent limitations in all control

systems, no evaluation of controls can provide absolute assurance that all control issues and instances of fraud, if any, within our company have been detected. These inherent limitations include the realities that judgments in decision-making can be faulty, and that breakdowns can occur because of a simple error or mistake. Additional controls can be circumvented by the individual acts of some persons, by collusion of two or more people, or by management override of the controls. The design of any system of controls also is based in part upon certain assumptions about the likelihood of future events, and there can be no assurance that any design will succeed in achieving its stated goals under all potential future conditions; over time, controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate. Because of the inherent limitations in a cost-effective control system, misstatements due to error or fraud may occur and not be detected.

- 27 -

# Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting

There were no changes in our internal control over financial reporting during the fourth quarter of our fiscal year ended March 31, 2016 that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

#### ITEM 9B. OTHER INFORMATION

None.

#### PART III

#### ITEM 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

#### **Directors and Executive Officers**

All directors of our company hold office until the next annual meeting of our stockholders or until their successors have been elected and qualified, or until their death, resignation or removal. The executive officers of our company are appointed by our board of directors and hold office until their death, resignation or removal from office.

Our directors and executive officers, their ages, positions held, and duration of such, are as follows:

| Name               | Position Held with Our Company                               | Age | Date First Elected or Appointed |
|--------------------|--|-----|---------------------------------|
| Steven P. Nickolas | Chairman, President, Chief<br>Executive Officer and Director | 60  | May 31, 2013                    |
| Richard A. Wright  | Vice-President, Secretary, Treasurer and Director            | 58  | May 31, 2013                    |

#### **Business Experience**

The following is a brief account of the education and business experience of directors and executive officers during at least the past five years, indicating their principal occupation during the period, and the name and principal business of the organization by which they were employed:

Steven P. Nickolas

In 2008, Mr. Nickolas was appointed President of Nutripure Beverages, Inc., a small cap pink sheet company that intended to launch a beverage product that was developed by him, on a national basis. The company was unsuccessful in raising the necessary capital, at which time Mr. Nickolas resigned his position after three months with the company and proceeded to investigate other financial opportunities. From May 2008 to July 2010, Mr. Nickolas was a founder of and acted as the president, secretary, treasurer and a director of Northsight Capital, Inc., a publicly-traded financial holding company (OTCBB: NCAP), which was sold in order to support the ongoing research and development of various beverage products. During this time Mr. Nickolas founded Jayger International, LTD, which involved the sale of a variety of healthy products in Japan and other Asian countries. Mr. Nickolas also engaged in a number of consulting activities with both large and small companies and continued to remain active in the food and beverage industry. During this same period of time Mr. Nickolas founded The Healthy Food Project, Inc., a 501(c)(3) non-profit organization dedicated to promoting the development of healthy foods and beverages for the public use. Over the past

two years Mr. Nickolas has focused his attention on the commercial development of the water electrolysis process utilized in Alkaline 88, LLC.

- 28 -

Effective as of May 31, 2013, Mr. Nickolas was appointed as chairman, president, chief executive officer, secretary and a director of our company. On August 7, 2013, our board of directors replaced Mr. Nickolas as secretary of our company with Richard A. Wright.

Mr. Nickolas graduated from Claremont Men s College (Now Claremont-Mckenna College) in 1977 with a Bachelor of Science Degree in Economics and Political Philosophy. He did post-graduate studies at Cal Poly Pomona in Psychology in 1978. He also attended Claremont Graduate School in 1978 in Government studies.

We believe that Mr. Nickolas is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of his knowledge of our current operations in addition to his education and business experiences described above.

## Richard A. Wright

Mr. Wright is a Certified Public Accountant. He graduated Magnum Cum Laude in 1978 from Mount Union University in Alliance, Ohio. He has done graduate level MBA courses at Case Western Reserve College in Cleveland, Ohio. In 2008, Mr. Wright became the Chief Financial Officer for PCT International. PCT is a leading worldwide developer and manufacturer of last mile and access network solutions for broadband communication networks. PCT focuses on innovative and cost-effective solutions that allow service providers to improve system integrity and expand service offerings. It has manufacturing plants in USA and China and sells their products in 42 countries. In 2010, Mr. Wright began his own tax and accounting CPA firm in Scottsdale, Arizona, Wright Tax Solutions PLC. Mr. Wright also began Wright Investment Group, LLC, a small equity participation firm that helps provide seed capital through micro loans and financial expertise to start-up enterprises.

Effective as of May 31, 2013, Mr. Wright was appointed as vice-president, treasurer and a director of our company. On August 7, 2013, our board of directors appointed Mr. Wright as secretary of our company.

We believe that Mr. Wright is qualified to serve on our board of directors because of his knowledge of our current operations in addition to his education and business experiences described above.

#### **Family Relationships**

There are no family relationships between any director or executive officer.

#### **Involvement in Certain Legal Proceedings**

Except as disclosed below, none of our directors and executive officers has been involved in any of the following events during the past ten years:

- (a) any petition under the federal bankruptcy laws or any state insolvency laws filed by or against, or an appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent or similar officer by a court for the business or property of such person, or any partnership in which such person was a general partner at or within two years before the time of such filing, or any corporation or business association of which such person was an executive officer at or within two years before the time of such filing;
- (b) any conviction in a criminal proceeding or being subject to a pending criminal proceeding (excluding traffic violations and other minor offences);
- (c) being subject to any order, judgment, or decree, not subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated, of any court of competent jurisdiction, permanently or temporarily enjoining such person from, or otherwise

limiting, the following activities: (i) acting as a futures commission merchant, introducing broker, commodity trading advisor, commodity pool operator, floor broker, leverage transaction merchant, any other person regulated by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, or an associated person of any of the foregoing, or as an investment adviser, underwriter, broker or dealer in securities, or as an affiliated person, director or employee of any investment company, bank, savings and loan association or insurance company, or engaging in or continuing any conduct or practice in connection with such activity; engaging in any type of business practice; or (iii) engaging in any activity in connection with the purchase or sale of any security or commodity or in connection with any violation of federal or state securities laws or federal commodities laws;

- 29 -

- (d) being the subject of any order, judgment or decree, not subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated, of any federal or state authority barring, suspending or otherwise limiting for more than 60 days the right of such person to engage in any activity described in paragraph (c)(i) above, or to be associated with persons engaged in any such activity;
- (e) being found by a court of competent jurisdiction (in a civil action), the Securities and Exchange Commission to have violated a federal or state securities or commodities law, and the judgment in such civil action or finding by the Securities and Exchange Commission has not been reversed, suspended, or vacated;
- (f) being found by a court of competent jurisdiction in a civil action or by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission to have violated any federal commodities law, and the judgment in such civil action or finding by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission has not been subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated;
- (g) being the subject of, or a party to, any federal or state judicial or administrative order, judgment, decree, or finding, not subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated, relating to an alleged violation of: (i) any federal or state securities or commodities law or regulation; or (ii) any law or regulation respecting financial institutions or insurance companies including, but not limited to, a temporary or permanent injunction, order of disgorgement or restitution, civil money penalty or temporary or permanent cease-and-desist order, or removal or prohibition order; or (iii) any law or regulation prohibiting mail or wire fraud or fraud in connection with any business entity; or
- (h) being the subject of, or a party to, any sanction or order, not subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated, of any self-regulatory organization (as defined in Section 3(a)(26) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934), any registered entity (as defined in Section 1(a)(29) of the Commodity Exchange Act), or any equivalent exchange, association, entity or organization that has disciplinary authority over its members or persons associated with a member.

In 2010 Steven P. Nickolas discovered, by way of a forensic audit, that he had been paying the wrong bank for holding his principal home mortgage. Mr. Nickolas initiated a lawsuit in the Federal Court, District of Arizona, seeking to determine the appropriate lender holding the note on his first mortgage. Litigation in this suit continued into 2014 at which time a settlement was reached but no resolution occurred. Nationstar, a mortgage servicing company began foreclosure proceedings once again putting Mr. Nickolas s prime residence in jeopardy. To force resolution of ownership and upon advice from legal counsel, Mr. Nickolas filed a Chapter 13 bankruptcy petition in the State of Arizona on July 22, 2015. Currently, the proceeding is underway in the bankruptcy court continuing to attempt to identify the proper lender and holder of the note on Mr. Nickolas s home property.

#### Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance

Section 16(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 requires our executive officers and directors, and persons who own more than 10% of our common stock, to file reports regarding ownership of, and transactions in, our securities with the Securities and Exchange Commission and to provide us with copies of those filings. Based solely on our review of the copies of such forms received by us, or written representations from certain reporting persons we believe that during year ended March 31, 2016 all filing requirements applicable to our executive officers and directors, and persons who own more than 10% of our common stock were complied with, with the exception of the following:

- 30 -

| Name               | Number of<br>Late Reports | Number of Transactions<br>Not Reported on a<br>Timely Basis | Failure to File<br>Requested Forms |
|--------------------|---------------------------|---|------------------------------------|
| Steven P. Nickolas | 1                         | 1   | Nil                                |
| Richard A. Wright  | 1                         | 1   | Nil                                |

#### **Code of Ethics**

We have not adopted a code of ethics because our board of directors believes that our small size does not merit the expense of preparing, adopting and administering a code of ethics. Our board of directors intends to adopt a code of ethics when circumstances warrant.

#### **Committees of Board of Directors**

We do not presently have a separately constituted audit committee, compensation committee, nominating committee, or any other committees of our board of directors. Our board of directors does not believe that it is necessary to have such committees because it believes that the functions of such committees can be adequately performed by our board of directors.

We do not have any defined policy or procedure requirements for our stockholders to submit recommendations or nominations for directors. We do not currently have any specific or minimum criteria for the election of nominees to our board of directors and we do not have any specific process or procedure for evaluating such nominees. Our board of directors assesses all candidates, whether submitted by management or stockholders, and makes recommendations for election or appointment.

A stockholder who wishes to communicate with our board of directors may do so by directing a written request to the address appearing on the first page of this annual report.

#### **Audit Committee Financial Expert**

Our board of directors has determined that Richard A. Wright, a director of our company, qualifies as an audit committee financial expert as defined in Item 407(d)(5)(ii) of Regulation S-K, but Mr. Wright is not independent as the term is used by NASDAQ Marketplace Rule 5605(a)(2). We believe that retaining an independent director who would qualify as an audit committee financial expert would be overly costly and burdensome and is not warranted in our circumstances given the early stages of our development.

#### ITEM 11. EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

Summary Compensation

The particulars of compensation paid to the following persons:

- (a) all individuals serving as our principal executive officer during the year ended March 31, 2016
- (b) each of our two most highly compensated executive officers who were serving as executive officers at the end of the year ended March 31, 2016; and

(c)

up to two additional individuals for whom disclosure would have been provided under (b) but for the fact that the individual was not serving as our executive officer at March 31, 2016,

who we will collectively refer to as the named executive officers, for all services rendered in all capacities to our company and subsidiaries for the years ended March 31, 2016 and 2015 are set out in the following summary compensation table:

- 31 -

| Summary Com   | Summary Compensation Table Years ended March 31, 2016 and 2015 |                    |                  |                         |                          |  |  |   |                      |
|---|--|--------------------|------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|--|--|---|----------------------|
| Name<br>and Principal<br>Position   | Year   | Salary<br>(\$)     | Bonus<br>(\$)    | Stock<br>Awards<br>(\$) | Option<br>Awards<br>(\$) | Non-<br>Equity<br>Incentive<br>Plan<br>Compensa-<br>tion<br>(\$) | Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Earnings (\$) | All<br>Other<br>Compensa-<br>tion<br>(\$) | Total<br>(\$)        |
| Steven P. Nickolas President, Chief Executive Officer, Chairman and Director      | 2016<br>2015   | 144,000<br>124,531 | 35,000<br>23,937 | Nil<br>Nil              | 780,000<br>1,092,090     | Nil<br>Nil   | Nil<br>Nil                                       | 27,640<br>21,291                          | 986,640<br>1,264,612 |
| Richard A.<br>Wright<br>Vice-President,<br>Secretary,<br>Treasury and<br>Director | 2016<br>2015   | 132,000<br>118,024 | 35,000<br>23,937 | Nil<br>Nil              | 780,000<br>1,092,090     | Nil<br>Nil   | Nil<br>Nil                                       | 19,544<br>4,379                           | 966,544<br>1,238,430 |

For the year ended March 31, 2015 Steven P. Nickolas had an oral agreement with Alkaline 88, LLC as the Chief Executive Officer and President for a salary of \$11,000 per month plus a bonus up to 20% of his base salary. In addition, Alkaline 88, LLC provided health insurance, an auto allowance and other benefits totaling \$24,054.

For the year ended March 31, 2015 Richard A. Wright had an oral agreement with Alkaline 88, LLC as the Chief Financial Officer for a salary of \$10,000 per month plus a bonus up to 20% of his base salary. In addition, Alkaline 88, LLC provided, an auto allowance and other benefits totaling \$4,379.

Effective October 7, 2013, our board of directors adopted and approved the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan. The plan was approved by a majority of our stockholders on October 7, 2013. On October 31, 2014, our board of directors amended the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan to, among other things, increase the number of shares of stock of our company available for the grant of awards under the plan from 20,000,000 shares to 35,000,000 shares. The purpose of the plan is to (a) enable our company and any of our affiliates to attract and retain the types of employees, consultants and directors who will contribute to our company s long range success; (b) provide incentives that align the interests of employees, consultants and directors with those of the stockholders of our company; and (c) promote the success of our company s business. Effective as of December 30, 2015, we effected a 50-for-1 reverse stock split of our authorized and issued and outstanding shares of common stock which decreased the number of shares of stock of our company available for the grant of awards under the plan from 35,000,000 shares to 700,000 shares. Effective as of January 20, 2016, our board of directors amended the plan to increase the number of shares of stock of our company available for the grant of awards under the plan from 700,000 to 7,700,000. The plan enables us to grant awards of a maximum of 7,700,000 shares of our stock and awards that may be granted under the plan includes incentive stock options, non-qualified stock options, stock appreciation rights, restricted awards and performance compensation awards.

Effective October 9, 2013, we granted a total of 6,000,000 stock options to Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (3,000,000 stock options to each). The stock options were exercisable at the exercise price of \$0.605 per share for a period of ten years from the date of grant. The stock options vested as follows: (i) 1,000,000 upon the date of grant; and (ii) 500,000 per quarter until fully vested. On October 31, 2014, we reduced the exercise price of these stock options to \$0.15 per share.

Effective May 12, 2014, we granted a total of 1,200,000 stock options Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (600,000 stock options to each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$0.165 per share for a period of five years from the date of grant. 600,000 stock options vested upon the date of grant.

- 32 -

Effective May 21, 2014, we granted a total of 6,000,000 stock options to Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (3,000,000 stock options to each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$0.1455 per share for a period of ten years from the date of grant. 3,000,000 of these stock options vested upon the date of grant and the other 3,000,000 stock options vested on November 21, 2014.

Effective February 18, 2015, we granted a total of 1,600,000 stock options to Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (800,000 stock options each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$0.115 per share for a period of five years from the date of grant. All of these stock options vested upon the date of grant.

We estimated compensation expense of \$2,249,902 on the stock options granted that vested during the year ended March 31, 2015, divided equally between Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright in the amount of \$1,112,868 each. The aggregate intrinsic value of these options was \$0 at March 31, 2015.

Effective January 29, 2016, we granted a total of 3,000,000 stock options to Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (1,500,000 stock options each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$0.52 per share until October 7, 2023. All of these stock options vested effective January 29, 2016.

We estimated compensation expense of \$1,560,000 on the stock options granted that vested during the year ended March 31, 2016, divided equally between Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright in the amount of \$780,000 each. The aggregate intrinsic value of these options was \$4,290,000 at March 31, 2016.

Employment Agreement with Steven P. Nickolas

On March 30, 2016, we entered into an employment agreement dated effective March 1, 2016 with Steven P. Nickolas, our president, chief executive officer and director, pursuant to which Mr. Nickolas agreed to perform such duties as are regularly and customarily performed by the president and chief executive officer of a corporation, and any other duties consistent with Mr. Nickolas s position in our company. Pursuant to the terms of the employment agreement, we have agreed to (i) pay Mr. Nickolas \$15,000 per month or such other amount as may be determined by our board of directors from time to time; and (ii) issue to Mr. Nickolas 1,500,000 shares of our Series C Preferred Stock (issued effective as of March 31, 2016). We also agreed that each of the following events constitute a Negotiated Trigger Event as defined in the Certificate of Designation for the Series C Preferred Stock: (i) the occurrence of a change of control event; (ii) the death of Mr. Nickolas; and (iii) the termination of the employment agreement for any reason.

In addition, we may (i) grant awards under our 2013 equity incentive plan to Mr. Nickolas from time to time and (ii) pay to Mr. Nickolas an annual discretionary performance bonus in an amount to be determined by our board of directors in its sole discretion. Mr. Nickolas will also be eligible to participate in other bonus programs offered by our company to our senior staff from time to time.

In addition, Mr. Nickolas will be entitled to participate in all of our employee benefit plans provided by our company to our senior officers. If we do not provide such plans at any time, we agreed to reimburse Mr. Nickolas for the reasonable cost of any such plans obtained privately. We also agreed to (i) provide Mr. Nickolas with vehicle leased in our company s name, with lease payments not exceeding \$700/month or such other amount as may be determined by our board of directors; (ii) pay Mr. Nickolas an allowance of \$5,000 per month or such other amount as may be determined by our board of directors, which may be used by Mr. Nickolas as he sees fit, including without limitation, the funding of non-qualified retirement plans; (iii) reimburse Mr. Nickolas for any expenses that he incurs in connection with his duties under his employment agreement. Mr. Nickolas will be entitled in each year to five weeks paid vacation, in addition to weekends and statutory holidays, to be taken in installments of no more than three consecutive weeks of paid time off.

The initial term of the employment agreement is three years and, on the third anniversary of the effective date of the employment and on each annual anniversary date thereafter, the term of the employment agreement will automatically be extended by one additional year unless either party gives 90 days written notice to the other of its intention not to renew the employment agreement.

- 33 -

Provided that Mr. Nickolas has acted within the scope of his authority, we agreed to indemnify and save harmless Mr. Nickolas (including his heirs and legal representatives) against any and all costs, claims and expenses (including any amounts paid to settle any actions or satisfy any judgments) which: he may suffer or incur by reason of any matter or thing which he may in good faith do or have done or caused to be done as an employee, officer or director of our company, any of its subsidiaries or of any of their respective affiliates; or was reasonably incurred by him in respect of any civil, criminal or administrative action or proceeding to which he is made a party by reason of being or having been an employee, officer or director of our company, any of its subsidiaries or of any of their respective affiliates; provided that, the foregoing indemnification will apply only if: he acted honestly and in good faith with a view to the best interests of our company, any of its subsidiaries or any of their respective affiliates; and in the case of a criminal or administrative action or proceeding that is enforced by a monetary penalty, he had reasonable grounds for believing that his conduct was lawful.

Mr. Nickolas agreed to indemnify and save harmless our company against, and agree to hold it harmless from, any and all damages, injuries, claims, demands, actions, liability, costs and expenses (including reasonable legal fees) incurred or made against our company arising from or connected with the performance or non-performance of his employment by him or the beach of any warranty, representation or covenant herein by him, other than claims by him pursuant to his employment agreement.

If and to the extent we maintain directors and officers liability insurance for the protection of our executives in connection with acts and omissions occurring during their employment with our company, we agreed that Mr. Nickolas will be included as an officer and director who is covered by such policy on a basis no less favorable than made available to other executives of our company.

Cash Bonus to Steven P. Nickolas

Effective March 15, 2016, we agreed to pay Mr. Nickolas a cash bonus in the amount of \$35,000 for past services that he has provided to our company.

Employment Agreement with Richard A. Wright

On March 30, 2016, we entered into an employment agreement dated effective March 1, 2016 with Richard A. Wright, our vice-president, secretary, treasurer and director, pursuant to which Mr. Wright agreed to perform such duties as are regularly and customarily performed by the vice president, secretary and treasurer of a corporation, and any other duties consistent with Mr. Wright sposition in our company. Pursuant to the terms of the employment agreement, we have agreed to (i) pay Mr. Wright \$14,000 per month or such other amount as may be determined by our board of directors from time to time; and (ii) issue to Mr. Wright 1,500,000 shares of our Series C Preferred Stock (issued effective as of March 31, 2016). We also agreed that each of the following events constitute a Negotiated Trigger Event as defined in the Certificate of Designation for the Series C Preferred Stock: (i) the occurrence of a change of control event; (ii) the death of Mr. Wright; and (iii) the termination of the employment agreement for any reason.

In addition, we may (i) grant awards under our 2013 equity incentive plan to Mr. Wright from time to time and (ii) pay to Mr. Wright an annual discretionary performance bonus in an amount to be determined by our board of directors in its sole discretion. Mr. Wright will also be eligible to participate in other bonus programs offered by our company to our senior staff from time to time.

In addition, Mr. Wright will be entitled to participate in all of our employee benefit plans provided by our company to our senior officers. If we do not provide such plans at any time, we agreed to reimburse Mr. Wright for the reasonable cost of any such plans obtained privately. We also agreed to (i) provide Mr. Wright with vehicle leased in our

company s name, with lease payments not exceeding \$700/month or such other amount as may be determined by our board of directors; (ii) pay Mr. Wright an allowance of \$5,000 per month or such other amount as may be determined by our board of directors, which may be used by Mr. Wright as he sees fit, including without limitation, the funding of non-qualified retirement plans; (iii) reimburse Mr. Wright for any expenses that he incurs in connection with his duties under his employment agreement. Mr. Wright will be entitled in each year to five weeks paid vacation, in addition to weekends and statutory holidays, to be taken in installments of no more than three consecutive weeks of paid time off.

- 34 -

The initial term of the employment agreement is three years and, on the third anniversary of the effective date of the employment and on each annual anniversary date thereafter, the term of the employment agreement will automatically be extended by one additional year unless either party gives 90 days written notice to the other of its intention not to renew the employment agreement.

Provided that Mr. Wright has acted within the scope of his authority, we agreed to indemnify and save harmless Mr. Wright (including his heirs and legal representatives) against any and all costs, claims and expenses (including any amounts paid to settle any actions or satisfy any judgments) which: he may suffer or incur by reason of any matter or thing which he may in good faith do or have done or caused to be done as an employee, officer or director of our company, any of its subsidiaries or of any of their respective affiliates; or was reasonably incurred by him in respect of any civil, criminal or administrative action or proceeding to which he is made a party by reason of being or having been an employee, officer or director of our company, any of its subsidiaries or of any of their respective affiliates; provided that, the foregoing indemnification will apply only if: he acted honestly and in good faith with a view to the best interests of our company, any of its subsidiaries or any of their respective affiliates; and in the case of a criminal or administrative action or proceeding that is enforced by a monetary penalty, he had reasonable grounds for believing that his conduct was lawful.

Mr. Wright agreed to indemnify and save harmless our company against, and agree to hold it harmless from, any and all damages, injuries, claims, demands, actions, liability, costs and expenses (including reasonable legal fees) incurred or made against our company arising from or connected with the performance or non-performance of his employment by him or the beach of any warranty, representation or covenant herein by him, other than claims by him pursuant to his employment agreement.

If and to the extent we maintain directors and officers liability insurance for the protection of our executives in connection with acts and omissions occurring during their employment with our company, we agreed that Mr. Wright will be included as an officer and director who is covered by such policy on a basis no less favorable than made available to other executives of our company.

Cash Bonus to Richard A. Wright

Effective March 15, 2016, we agreed to pay Mr. Wright a cash bonus in the amount of \$35,000 for past services that he has provided to our company.

Grant of Series C Convertible Preferred Stock

On March 30, 2016, we designated 3,000,000 shares of the authorized and unissued preferred stock of our company as Series C Preferred Stock by filing a Certificate of Designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada. Each share of the Series C Preferred Stock will be convertible, without the payment of any additional consideration by the holder and at the option of the holder, into one fully paid and non-assessable share of our common stock at any time after (i) we achieve the consolidated revenue of our company and all of its subsidiaries equal to or greater than \$15,000,000 in any 12 month period, ending on the last day of any quarterly period of our fiscal year; or (ii) a Negotiated Trigger Event, defined as an event upon which the Series C Preferred Stock will be convertible as may be agreed by our company and the holder in writing from time to time.

Effective March 31, 2016, we issued a total of 3,000,000 shares of our Series C Preferred Stock to Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (1,500,000 shares to each), our directors and executive officers, pursuant to their employment agreements dated effective March 1, 2016.

#### **Retirement or Similar Benefit Plans**

- 35 -

There are no arrangements or plans in which we provide retirement or similar benefits for our directors or executive officers.

# Resignation, Retirement, Other Termination, or Change in Control Arrangements

Other than the provisions of the employment agreements with Mr. Nickolas and Mr. Wright described below, we have no contract, agreement, plan or arrangement, whether written or unwritten, that provides for payments to our directors or executive officers at, following, or in connection with the resignation, retirement or other termination of our directors or executive officers, or a change in control of our company or a change in our directors or executive officers responsibilities following a change in control.

If, within 90 days of the occurrence of a change of control event, Mr. Nickolas resigns from his employment relationship with our company or our company terminates his employment agreement for any reason other than for just cause, then we agreed to pay Mr. Nickolas severance in an amount equal to the following: 36 months—salary plus an amount, if any, equal to the following: one month—s salary multiplied by the number of calendar years, starting on the effective date of the employment agreement, that Mr. Nickolas is employed by our company under his employment agreement.

We may terminate Mr. Nickolas s employment at any time for other than just cause by delivering to Mr. Nickolas written notice of termination. In such a case, we agreed to pay Mr. Nickolas severance in an amount equal to the following: 36 months salary plus an amount, if any, equal to the following: one month s salary multiplied by the number of calendar years, starting on the effective date of the employment, that Mr. Nickolas is employed by our company under his employment agreement.

Subject to applicable employment laws or similar legislation, we may terminate Mr. Nickolas s employment in the event he has been unable to perform his duties for a period of eight consecutive months or a cumulative period of 12 months in any consecutive 24 month period, because of a physical or mental disability. Mr. Nickolas s employment will automatically terminate on his death. In the event Mr. Nickolas s employment with our company terminates by reason of Mr. Nickolas s death or disability, then upon and immediately effective on the date of termination we agreed to promptly pay and provide Mr. Nickolas (or in the event of Mr. Nickolas s death, Mr. Nickolas s estate); any unpaid salary and any outstanding and accrued regular and special vacation pay through the date of termination; reimbursement for any unreimbursed expenses incurred through to the date of termination; and any outstanding amounts due under any awards which will be dealt with in accordance with our 2013 equity incentive plan and award agreement. In the event Mr. Nickolas s employment is terminated due to a disability, we agreed to pay to Mr. Nickolas the severance referred to above.

We may terminate Mr. Nickolas s employment for just cause at any time by delivering to Mr. Nickolas written notice of termination. In the event that Mr. Nickolas s employment with our company is terminated by our company for just cause, Mr. Nickolas will not be entitled to any additional payments or benefits (except as otherwise provided in his employment agreement), other than for amounts due and owing to Mr. Nickolas by our company as of the date of termination, except for any awards under our 2013 equity incentive plan will be dealt with in accordance with the plan and award agreement.

If, within 90 days of the occurrence of a change of control event, Mr. Wright resigns from his employment relationship with our company or our company terminates his employment agreement for any reason other than for just cause, then we agreed to pay Mr. Wright severance in an amount equal to the following: 36 months salary plus an amount, if any, equal to the following: one month s salary multiplied by the number of calendar years, starting on the effective date of the employment agreement, that Mr. Wright is employed by our company under his employment agreement.

We may terminate Mr. Wright s employment at any time for other than just cause by delivering to Mr. Wright written notice of termination. In such a case, we agreed to pay Mr. Wright severance in an amount equal to the following: 36 months salary plus an amount, if any, equal to the following: one month s salary multiplied by the number of calendar years, starting on the effective date of the employment, that Mr. Wright is employed by our company under his employment agreement.

- 36 -

Subject to applicable employment laws or similar legislation, we may terminate Mr. Wright s employment in the event he has been unable to perform his duties for a period of eight consecutive months or a cumulative period of 12 months in any consecutive 24 month period, because of a physical or mental disability. Mr. Wright s employment will automatically terminate on his death. In the event Mr. Wright s employment with our company terminates by reason of Mr. Wright s death or disability, then upon and immediately effective on the date of termination we agreed to promptly pay and provide Mr. Wright (or in the event of Mr. Wright s death, Mr. Wright s estate); any unpaid salary and any outstanding and accrued regular and special vacation pay through the date of termination; reimbursement for any unreimbursed expenses incurred through to the date of termination; and any outstanding amounts due under any awards which will be dealt with in accordance with our 2013 equity incentive plan and the award agreement. In the event Mr. Wright s employment is terminated due to a disability, we agreed to pay to Mr. Wright the severance referred to above.

We may terminate Mr. Wright s employment for just cause at any time by delivering to Mr. Wright written notice of termination. In the event that Mr. Wright s employment with our company is terminated by our company for just cause, Mr. Wright will not be entitled to any additional payments or benefits (except as otherwise provided in his employment agreement), other than for amounts due and owing to Mr. Wright by our company as of the date of termination, except for any awards under our 2013 equity incentive plan will be dealt with in accordance with the plan and award agreement.

#### **Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year-End**

The following table sets forth for each named executive officer certain information concerning the outstanding equity awards as of March 31, 2016:

|                       | Option award  | ds  |  |                                     |                              | Stock aw   | ards   |   |  |
|-----------------------|---|---|--|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|---|--|
| Name                  | Number of securities underlying unexercised options (#) exercisable | Number of securities underlying unexercised options (#) unexercisable | Equity incentive plan awards: Number of securities underlying unexercised unearned options (#) | Option<br>exercise<br>price<br>(\$) | Option<br>expiration<br>date | Number<br>of<br>shares<br>or units<br>of stock<br>that<br>have<br>not<br>vested<br>(#) | Market value of shares of units of stock that have not vested (\$) | Equity incentive plan awards: Number of unearned shares, units or other rights that have not vested (#) | Equity incentive plan awards: Market or payout value of unearned shares, units or other rights that have not vested (\$) |
| Steven P.<br>Nickolas | 60,000  | Nil   | Nil  | 7.50                                | October 9,<br>2023           | Nil  | Nil  | Nil   | Nil  |
|                       | 12,000  | Nil   | Nil  | 8.25                                | May 12,<br>2019              | Nil  | Nil  | Nil   | Nil  |

| 60,000    | Nil | Nil | 7.275 | May 21,<br>2024      | Nil | Nil | Nil | Nil |
|-----------|-----|-----|-------|----------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 16,000    | Nil | Nil | 5.75  | February<br>18, 2020 | Nil | Nil | Nil | Nil |
| 1,500,000 | Nil | Nil | 0.52  | October 7,<br>2023   | Nil | Nil | Nil | Nil |

- 37 -

| Richard<br>A. Wright | 60,000    | Nil | Nil | 7.50  | October<br>9, 2023   | Nil | Nil | Nil | Nil |
|----------------------|-----------|-----|-----|-------|----------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|                      | 12,000    | Nil | Nil | 8.25  | May 12,<br>2019      | Nil | Nil | Nil | Nil |
|                      | 60,000    | Nil | Nil | 7.275 | May 21,<br>2024      | Nil | Nil | Nil | Nil |
|                      | 16,000    | Nil | Nil | 5.75  | February<br>18, 2020 | Nil | Nil | Nil | Nil |
|                      | 1,500,000 | Nil | Nil | 0.52  | October<br>7, 2023   | Nil | Nil | Nil | Nil |

# **Compensation of Directors**

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016, we had no directors who were not our named executive officers.

We have no formal plan for compensating our directors for their services in their capacity as directors. Our directors are entitled to reimbursement for reasonable travel and other out-of-pocket expenses incurred in connection with attendance at meetings of our board of directors. Our board of directors may award special remuneration to any director undertaking any special services on their behalf other than services ordinarily required of a director.

# ITEM 12. SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS

The following table sets forth, as of July 13, 2016, certain information with respect to the beneficial ownership of our common stock by each stockholder known by us to be the beneficial owner of more than 5% of any class of our voting securities and by each of our directors, our executive officers and by our executive officers and directors as a group.

| Name of Beneficial Owner   | Title of Class                             | Amount and Nature of<br>Beneficial Ownership <sup>(1)</sup> | Percentage of Class <sup>(2)</sup> |
|--|--|---|------------------------------------|
| Steven P. Nickolas   | Common Stock                               | 2,424,000   | 15.91%                             |
| 14301 North 87 St., Suite<br>109<br>Scottsdale, AZ 85260               | Series A<br>Preferred Stock (3)            | 10,000,000  | 50%                                |
| Scottsdare, 112 03200  | Series C<br>Preferred Stock <sup>(6)</sup> | 1,500,000   | 50%                                |
| Richard A. Wright  | Common Stock                               | 1,648,000 <sup>(5)</sup>                                    | 10.81%                             |
| 14301 N. 87 <sup>th</sup> Street, Suite<br>119<br>Scottsdale, AZ 85260 | Series A<br>Preferred Stock (3)            | 10,000,000  | 50%                                |
| Scottsdate, 112 03200  | Series C<br>Preferred Stock <sup>(6)</sup> | 1,500,000   | 50%                                |
| All executive officers and   | Common Stock                               | 4,072,000   | 26.72%                             |
| directors as<br>a group (2 persons)                                    | Series A<br>Preferred Stock <sup>(3)</sup> | 20,000,000  | 100%                               |
|  |  | 3,000,000   | 100%                               |

| Series C                       |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Preferred Stock <sup>(6)</sup> |  |

### **Notes**

(1) Except as otherwise indicated, we believe that the beneficial owners of the common stock listed above, based on information furnished by such owners, have sole investment and voting power with respect to such shares, subject to community property laws where applicable. Beneficial ownership is determined in accordance with the rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission and generally includes voting or investment power with respect to securities. Common stock subject to options or warrants currently exercisable or exercisable within 60 days, are deemed outstanding for purposes of computing the percentage ownership of the person holding such option or warrants, but are not deemed outstanding for purposes of computing the percentage ownership of any other person.

- 38 -

- Percentage of common stock is based on 15,239,672 shares of our common stock issued and outstanding as of July 13, 2016. Percentage of Series A Preferred Stock is based on 20,000,000 shares of Series A Preferred Stock issued and outstanding as of July 13, 2016. Percentage of Series C Preferred Stock is based on 3,000,000 shares of Series C Preferred Stock issued and outstanding as of July 13, 2016.
- (3) The Series A Preferred Stock has 10 votes per share and is not convertible into shares of our common stock.
- (4) Consists of 1,648,000 stock options exercisable within 60 days, 430,000 shares of our common stock owned by WiN Investments, LLC and 346,000 shares of our common stock owned by Lifewater Industries, LLC. Steven P. Nickolas exercises voting and dispositive power with respect to the shares of our common stock that are beneficially owned by WiN Investments, LLC and Lifewater Industries, LLC.
- (5) Consists of 1,648,000 stock options exercisable within 60 days.
- (6) Each share of the Series C Preferred Stock will be convertible, without the payment of any additional consideration by the holder and at the option of the holder, into one fully paid and non-assessable share of our common stock at any time after (i) we achieve the consolidated revenue of our company and all of its subsidiaries equal to or greater than \$15,000,000 in any 12 month period, ending on the last day of any quarterly period of our fiscal year; or (ii) a Negotiated Trigger Event, defined as an event upon which the Series C Preferred Stock will be convertible as may be agreed by our company and the holder in writing from time to time.

# **Changes in Control**

We are unaware of any contract or other arrangement the operation of which may at a subsequent date result in a change in control of our company.

# ITEM 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE

Other than as disclosed below, there has been no transaction, since April 1, 2014, or currently proposed transaction, in which our company was or is to be a participant and the amount involved exceeds \$28,463.99, being the lesser of \$120,000 or one percent of the average of our total assets at year end for the last two completed fiscal years, and in which any of the following persons had or will have a direct or indirect material interest:

- (a) Any director or executive officer of our company;
- (b) Any person who beneficially owns, directly or indirectly, more than 5% of any class of our voting securities;
- (c) Any person who acquired control of our company when it was a shell company or any person that is part of a group, consisting of two or more persons that agreed to act together for the purpose of acquiring, holding, voting or disposing of our common stock, that acquired control of our company when it was a shell company; and
- (d) Any member of the immediate family (including spouse, parents, children, siblings and in- laws) of any of the foregoing persons.

- 39 -

#### Related Party Transactions with Water Engineering Solutions, LLC

On January 17, 2014, we entered into an equipment lease with Water Engineering Solutions LLC, an entity that is controlled and majority owned by Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright, for specialized equipment used to make our alkaline water. On February 12, 2014, we entered into an amendment #1 to the equipment lease agreement dated January 17, 2014 with Water Engineering Solutions, LLC. The amendment provides that the term of the lease will commence upon the actual installation and commercial operation of the equipment and continue for 60 months. The amendment also provides that the equipment will be leased for \$190,756 at a rate of 8% per annum with the residual amount of \$1.00. For the term of the agreement, we agreed to deliver to Water Engineering Solutions, LLC lease payments in the amount of \$3,864 per month, commencing 30 days after the equipment is commercially operating but no later than July 1, 2014. In addition, the amendment provides that the title will pass to us upon completion of the term and payment of \$1.00 residual amount.

On April 2, 2014, we entered into an equipment sale/lease back agreement with Water Engineering Solutions, LLC for specialized equipment with an original cost of \$208,773 acquired in August 2013. Under the terms of the agreement, Water Engineering Solutions, LLC bought back the equipment for \$188,000 in April 2014 and the equipment was leased back to us for \$188,000 at a rate of 8% per annum for a term of 60 months with the residual amount of \$1.00. For the term of the agreement, we agreed to deliver to Water Engineering Solutions, LLC lease payments in the amount of \$3,811.96 per month, commencing on May 2, 2014. In addition, the agreement provides that the title will pass to us upon completion of the term and payment of \$1.00 residual amount.

Under the terms of the exclusive manufacturing agreement entered into on April 15, 2013 between our company and Water Engineering Solutions LLC, we paid \$690,000 on May 1, 2014 and \$21,500 on June 27, 2014, \$115,000 on July 1, 2014, \$10,000 on August 2, 2014 and \$100,000 on August 22, 2014 for specialized equipment used in the production of our alkaline water.

Under the terms of the exclusive manufacturing agreement entered into on April 15, 2013 between our company and Water Engineering Solutions LLC, and during the year ended March 31, 2016, we paid \$312,500 to Water Engineering Solutions LLC for custom engineered equipment used in the production of our alkaline water.

### **Other Related Party Transactions**

On August 1, 2013 we entered into a 3-year sub-lease agreement requiring a monthly payment of \$2,085 for office space in Scottsdale, Arizona, with a basic monthly lease increase of 8% and 7% on each anniversary date. Our company or the landlord can cancel the lease with 30 days notice. The sub-lessor is an entity owned by Steven P. Nickolas, our chief executive officer and president.

During the period from June 19, 2012 to June 30, 2014, we had a total of \$65,378 in general and administrative expenses with related parties. Of the total, \$33,592 was to four different entities consisting of consulting fees to Beverage Science Laboratories (\$25,000), Water Enhanced Technologies, Inc. (\$3,000) and WiN Investments, LLC (\$2,000), entities controlled and owned by Steven P. Nickolas, and Water Engineering Solutions, LLC (\$3,592), an entity controlled and owned by Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright. In addition, \$12,000 was rent to Steven P. Nickolas and \$16,500 was professional fees to Wright Tax Solutions, LLC (\$12,500) and Wright Investment Group (\$4,000), entities controlled and owned by Richard A. Wright and \$7,638 for health insurance for Steven P. Nickolas \$9,000 auto allowance for Steve A Nickolas and \$3,385 auto allowance for Richard A. Wright.

Alkaline Water Corp. has a month-to-month sub-rental arrangement with Beverage Science Laboratories for \$1,914 per month.

# **Compensation for Executive Officers and Directors**

For information regarding compensation for our executive officers and directors, see Executive Compensation .

# **Director Independence**

- 40 -

We currently act with two directors consisting of Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright. Our common stock is quoted on the OTCQB operated by the OTC Markets Group, which does not impose any director independence requirements. Under NASDAQ rule 5605(a)(2), a director is not independent if he or she is also an executive officer or employee of the corporation or was, at any time during the past three years, employed by the corporation. Using this definition of independent director, we do not have any independent director.

#### ITEM 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTING FEES AND SERVICES

#### **Audit Fees**

The following table sets forth the fees billed to our company for the years ended March 31, 2016 and 2015 for professional services rendered by Seale and Beers, CPAs, our independent registered public accounting firm:

| Fees               | 2016            | 2014   |
|--------------------|-----------------|--------|
| Audit Fees         | \$<br>35,000 \$ | 30,000 |
| Audit Related Fees | -               | -      |
| Tax Fees           | -               | -      |
| Other Fees         | 22,500          | 9,000  |
| <b>Total Fees</b>  | \$<br>57,500 \$ | 39,000 |

#### **Pre-Approval Policies and Procedures**

Our entire board of directors, which acts as our audit committee, pre-approves all services provided by our independent registered public accounting firm. All of the above services and fees were reviewed and approved by our board of directors before the respective services were rendered.

Our board of directors has considered the nature and amount of fees billed by Seale and Beers, CPAs and believes that the provision of services for activities unrelated to the audit is compatible with maintaining its respective independence.

#### **PART IV**

# ITEM 15. EXHIBITS, FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES

| Exhibit |             |
|---------|-------------|
| Number  | Description |

| <b>(1)</b> | Underwriting Agreement  |
|------------|---|
| 1.1        | Engagement Agreement dated October 7, 2013 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-1, filed on November 27, 2013)                          |
| 1.2        | Amendment Agreement to Engagement Agreement dated November 1, 2013 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-1/A, filed on January 9, 2014)  |
| 1.3        | Amendment Agreement to Engagement Agreement dated November 25, 2013 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-1, filed on November 27, 2013) |
| 1.4        | Termination Agreement for Engagement Agreement dated March 12, 2014 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-1, filed on March 12, 2014)    |
| 1.5        | Engagement Agreement dated March 12, 2014 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (incorporated by  |

reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-1, filed on March 12, 2014)

(2) Plan of Acquisition, Reorganization, Arrangement, Liquidation or Succession

- 41 -

- 2.1 Share Exchange Agreement dated May 31, 2013 with Alkaline Water Corp. and its shareholders (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on June 5, 2013)
- (3) Articles of Incorporation and Bylaws
- 3.1 Articles of Incorporation (incorporated by reference from our Form S-1 Registration Statement, filed on October 28, 2011)
- 3.2 Certificate of Change (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on August 13, 2013)
- 3.3 Articles of Merger (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on August 13, 2013)
- 3.4 Certificate of Amendment (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on October 11, 2013)
- 3.5 Certificate of Designation (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on October 11, 2013)
- 3.6 Certificate of Designation (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on November 12, 2013)
- 3.7 Certificate of Change (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on December 30, 2015)
- 3.8 Certificate of Amendment to Articles of Incorporation (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 25, 2016)
- 3.9 Certificate of Amendment to Certificate of Designation (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 25, 2016)
- 3.10 Certificate of Designation (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on April 5, 2016)
- 3.11 Amended and Restated Bylaws (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on March 15, 2013)
- (10) Material Contracts
- 10.1 Contract Packer Agreement dated November 14, 2012 between Alkaline 84, LLC and AZ Bottled Water, LLC (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on June 5, 2013)
- 10.2 Stock Option Agreement dated October 9, 2013 with Steven P. Nickolas (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on November 13, 2013)
- 10.3 Stock Option Agreement dated October 9, 2013 with Richard A. Wright (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on November 13, 2013)
- 10.4 Contract Packer Agreement dated October 7, 2013 with White Water, LLC (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on November 13, 2013)
- 10.5 Manufacturing Agreement dated August 15, 2013 with Water Engineering Solutions, LLC (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-1, filed on November 27, 2013)
- Equipment Lease Agreement dated January 17, 2014 (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 27, 2014)
- 10.7 Revolving Accounts Receivable Funding Agreement dated February 20, 2014 (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on February 25, 2014)
- 10.8 Form of Securities Purchase Agreement dated as of April 28, 2014, between The Alkaline Water Company Inc. and the purchasers named therein (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 6, 2014)
- 10.9 Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 6, 2014)
- 10.10 Form of Placement Agent Common Stock Purchase Warrant (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 6, 2014)
- 10.11 Stock Option Agreement dated May 12, 2014 with Steven P. Nickolas (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 14, 2014)

- 10.12 Stock Option Agreement dated May 12, 2014 with Richard A. Wright (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 14, 2014)
- 10.13 Stock Option Agreement dated May 21, 2014 with Steven P. Nickolas (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 23, 2014)
- 10.14 Stock Option Agreement dated May 21, 2014 with Richard A. Wright (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 23, 2014)

- 42 -

| 10.15 | Amendment #1 dated February 12, 2014 to Equipment Lease Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on August 13, 2014)                      |
|-------|---|
| 10.16 | Equipment Sale/Lease Back Agreement dated April 2, 2014 (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on August 13, 2014)                                |
| 10.17 | Agreement dated August 12, 2014 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on August 21, 2014)                           |
| 10.18 | Form of Warrant Amendment Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on August 21, 2014)   |
| 10.19 | Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on August 21, 2014)   |
| 10.20 | Form of Warrant Amendment Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on October 9, 2014)   |
| 10.21 | Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on October 9, 2014)   |
| 10.22 | Master Lease Agreement dated October 28, 2014 with Veterans Capital Fund, LLC (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on November 4, 2014)            |
| 10.23 | Warrant Agreement dated October 28, 2014 with Veterans Capital Fund, LLC (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on November 4, 2014)                 |
| 10.24 | Registration Rights Agreement dated October 28, 2014 with Veterans Capital Fund, LLC (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on November 4, 2014)     |
| 10.25 | 2013 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on November 4, 2014)   |
| 10.26 | Form of Amending Agreement to Stock Option Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on November 4, 2014)                                     |
| 10.27 | Stock Option Agreement dated February 18, 2016 with Steven P. Nickolas (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on April 14, 2016)                     |
| 10.28 | Stock Option Agreement dated February 18, 2016 with Richard A. Wright (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on April 14, 2016)                      |
| 10.29 | Securities Purchase Agreement dated as of May 11, 2015 with Assurance Funding Solutions LLC (incorporated by reference from our Annual Report on Form 10-K, filed on July 14, 2015) |
| 10.30 | Secured Term Note dated May 2015 issued to Assurance Funding Solutions LLC (incorporated by reference from our Annual Report on Form 10-K, filed on July 14, 2015)                  |
| 10.31 | General Security Agreement dated as of May 11, 2015 with Assurance Funding Solutions LLC (incorporated by reference from our Annual Report on Form 10-K, filed on July 14, 2015)    |
| 10.32 | Securities Purchase Agreement dated as of August 20, 2015 with Assurance Funding Solutions LLC  |
| 10.33 | Secured Term Note dated August 20, 2015 issued to Assurance Funding Solutions LLC   |
| 10.34 | General Security Agreement dated as of August 20, 2015 with Assurance Funding Solutions LLC   |
| 10.35 | Form of Warrant Exchange Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8- K, filed on December 1, 2015)  |
| 10.36 | Loan Agreement dated November 30, 2015 with Neil Rogers (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on December 4, 2015)                                  |
| 10.37 | Promissory Note dated November 30, 2015 issued to Neil Rogers (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on December 4, 2015)                            |
| 10.38 | Escrow Agreement dated November 30, 2015 with Neil Rogers and Escrow Agent (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on December 4, 2015)               |
| 10.39 | 2013 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 25, 2016)   |
| 10.40 | Loan Agreement dated January 25, 2016 with Turnstone Capital Inc. (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 25, 2016)                        |

| <ul> <li>Escrow Agreement dated January 25, 2016 with Turnstone Capital Inc. and Escrow Agent (incomposition of the Composition of the Composi</li></ul> |           |
|--|-----------|
| 10.43 Amendment Agreement dated January 25, 2016 with Neil Rogers (incorporated by reference   | orporated |
| Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 25, 2016)   | from our  |

- 43 -

| 10.44        | Stock Option Agreement dated January 29, 2016 with Steven P. Nickolas (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on February 4, 2016)   |
|--------------|--|
| 10.45        | Stock Option Agreement dated January 29, 2016 with Richard A. Wright (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on February 4, 2016)    |
| 10.46        | Form of Subscription Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-1/A, filed on February 8, 2016)                                |
|              | Form of Warrant Certificate (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S- 1/A, filed on February 8, 2016)                                  |
|              | Employment Agreement dated effective March 1, 2016 with Steven P. Nickolas (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on April 5, 2016) |
|              | Employment Agreement dated effective March 1, 2016 with Richard A. Wright (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on April 5, 2016)  |
|              | Form of Promissory Note and Warrant Exchange Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on June 16, 2016)                     |
|              | Form of Warrant Exchange Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8- K, filed on June 16, 2016)  |
| (21)         | Subsidiaries   |
| 21.1         | Subsidiaries of The Alkaline Water Company Inc.  |
|              | Alkaline Water Corp., Arizona corporation  |
|              | Alkaline 88, LLC, Arizona limited liability company  |
| (23)         | Consents of Experts and Counsel  |
| 23.1*        | Consent of Seale and Beers, CPAs   |
| (31)         | Rule 13a-14 Certifications   |
| 31.1*        | Certification of Principal Executive Officer Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002   |
|              | Certification of Principal Financial Officer Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002   |
| (32)         | Section 1350 Certifications  |
| 32.1*        | Certification of Principal Executive Officer Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002   |
| 32.2*        | Certification of Principal Financial Officer Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002   |
| <b>(101)</b> | Interactive Data File  |
| 101.INS*     | XBRL Instance Document   |
| 101.SCH*     | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema   |
| 101.CAL*     | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase   |
| 101.DEF*     | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase  |
| 101.LAB*     | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase   |
| 101.PRE*     | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase  |
| * Filed her  | rewith.  |

# ITEM 16. FORM 10-K SUMMARY

None.

- 44 -

#### **SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

#### The Alkaline Water Company Inc.

By: /s/ Steven P. Nickolas

Steven P. Nickolas

President, Chief Executive Officer and Director

(Principal Executive Officer)

Date: July 14, 2016

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

By: /s/ Steven P. Nickolas

Steven P. Nickolas

President, Chief Executive Officer and Director

(Principal Executive Officer)

Date: July 14, 2016

By: /s/ Richard A. Wright Richard A. Wright

Vice-President, Secretary, Treasurer and Director

(Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting

Officer)

Date: July 14, 2016

# APPENDIX B

# UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 8-K

#### **CURRENT REPORT**

Pursuant to Section 13 OR 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934

Date of Report (Date of earliest event reported) July 22, 2016

### THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC.

Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Nevada 000-55096 EIN 99-0367049 (State or other jurisdiction of incorporation) (Commission (IRS Employer File Number) Identification No.)

7730 E Greenway Road Ste. 203

Scottsdale, AZ 85260

(Address of principal executive offices and Zip Code)

Registrant's telephone number, including area code: (480) 656-2423

#### Not Applicable

(Former name or former address, if changed since last report)

Check the appropriate box below if the Form 8-K filing is intended to simultaneously satisfy the filing obligation of the registrant under any of the following provisions:

| [ ] Written communications pursuant to Rule 425 under the Securities Act (17 CFR 230.425)                  |
|--|
| [ ] Soliciting material pursuant to Rule 14a-12 under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14a-12)                 |
| [ ] Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 14d-2(b) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.14d-2(b)) |
| [ ] Pre-commencement communications pursuant to Rule 13e-4(c) under the Exchange Act (17 CFR 240.13e-4(c)) |
|  |

Item 5.02 Departure of Directors or Certain Officers; Election of Directors; Appointment of Certain Officers; Compensatory Arrangements of Certain Officers.

Effective July 22, 2016, we appointed Aaron Keay as a director of our company.

Mr. Keay has been the President and Managing Partner of Inform Capital Partner, a corporate finance advisory and merchant banking firm, from 2008 to present. He was the Chairman, CEO and director of Inform Resources Corp., a mining company listed on the TSX Venture Exchange (the "TSXV"), from August 2010 until July 10, 2014. Mr. Keay was the CEO, President and director of IDM Mining Ltd. (formerly Revolution Resources), a mining company listed on the Toronto Stock Exchange, from 2009 until January 7, 2015. He was a director of OrganiGram Holdings Inc., an industrial company specializing in the production of condition specific medical marihuana under license from Health Canada listed on the TSXV, from September 14, 2010 until July 17, 2014. Mr. Keay was a director of Plateau Uranium Inc. (formerly Macusani Yellowcake Inc.), a uranium exploration and development company listed on the TSXV, from April 5, 2013 until September 4, 2014. He was a director of Aftermath Silver Inc. (formerly Full Metal Zinc Ltd.), a mineral exploration and development company listed on the TSXV, from February 2011 until December 12, 2013. Mr. Keay holds a Bachelor of Human Kinetics from the University of British Columbia. Family Relationships

No family relationships exist between any of our directors or executive officers.

Certain Related Transactions and Relationships

We have not been party to any transaction with Mr. Keay since April 1, 2014, or any currently proposed transaction with Mr. Keay in which we were or will be a participant and where the amount involved exceeds \$28,463.99, being the lesser of \$120,000 or one percent of the average of our total assets at year end for the last two completed fiscal years, and in which Mr. Keay had or will have a direct or indirect material interest.

2

### **SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned hereunto duly authorized.

THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC.

# /s/ Richard A. Wright

Richard A. Wright

Vice-President, Secretary, Treasurer and Director

July 27, 2016

3

## APPENDIX C

## UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

Washington, D.C. 20549

## **Form 10-Q**

## [X] QUARTERLY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the quarterly period ended June 30, 2016

[ ] TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

Commission file number 000-55096

## THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Nevada 99-0367049

(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization) (I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)

#### 7730 E Greenway Road, Suite 203, Scottsdale, AZ

85260

(Address of principal executive offices)

(Zip Code)

(480) 656-2423

(Registrant s telephone number, including area code)

#### **Not Applicable**

(Former name, former address and former fiscal year, if changed since last report)

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days.

Yes [X] No [ ]

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files).

Yes [X] No [ ]

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See definitions of large accelerated filer, accelerated filer and smaller reporting company in Ruble 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

| Large accelerated filer [ ]                   | Accelerated filer [ ]         |
|---|-------------------------------|
| Non-accelerated filer [ ]                     | Smaller reporting company [X] |
| (Do not check if a smaller reporting company) |                               |

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes[ ] No [X]

Indicate the number of shares outstanding of each of the issuer s classes of common stock, as of the latest practicable date.

15,265,272 shares of common stock issued and outstanding as of August 15, 2016.

## THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC. FORM 10-Q FOR THE THREE MONTHS ENDED JUNE 30, 2016

#### TABLE OF CONTENTS

|                |   | Page<br>No. |  |  |
|----------------|---|-------------|--|--|
|                | PART I - FINANCIAL INFORMATION  |             |  |  |
| <u>Item 1.</u> | <u>Financial Statements</u>   | <u>3</u>    |  |  |
| Item 2.        | Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations | <u>23</u>   |  |  |
| Item 3.        | Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk                            | <u>26</u>   |  |  |
| Item 4.        | Controls and Procedures   | <u>26</u>   |  |  |
|                | PART II - OTHER INFORMATION   |             |  |  |
| Item 1.        | <u>Legal Proceedings</u>  | <u>26</u>   |  |  |
| Item1A.        | Risk Factors  | <u>27</u>   |  |  |
| Item 2.        | <u>Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities and Use of Proceeds</u>                    | <u>27</u>   |  |  |
| Item 3.        | <u>Defaults Upon Senior Securities</u>  | <u>27</u>   |  |  |
| Item 4.        | Mine Safety Disclosures   | <u>27</u>   |  |  |
| Item 5.        | Other Information   | <u>27</u>   |  |  |
| Item 6.        | <u>Exhibits</u>   | <u>27</u>   |  |  |
|                | <u>Signatures</u>   | <u>31</u>   |  |  |
|                | 2   |             |  |  |

#### PART I FINANCIAL INFORMATION

#### **Item 1. Financial Statements.**

## THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC. CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET (unaudited)

### THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC. CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET (unaudited)

|   | ne 30, 2016<br>maudited) | Ma | arch 31, 2016      |
|---|--------------------------|----|--------------------|
| ASSETS  |                          |    |                    |
| Current assets  |                          |    |                    |
| Cash and cash equivalents                                       | \$<br>437,720            | \$ | 1,192,119          |
| Accounts receivable   | 937,951                  |    | 911,390            |
| Inventory   | 509,200                  |    | 434,708            |
| Prepaid expenses  | 10,600                   |    | 10,806             |
|   |                          |    |                    |
| Total current assets  | 1,895,471                |    | 2,549,023          |
| Fixed assets - net  | 1,186,405                |    | 1,226,534          |
| Equipment deposits - related party                              | 67,619                   |    | · · · · -          |
|   |                          |    |                    |
|   |                          |    |                    |
| Total assets  | \$<br>3,149,495          | \$ | 3,775,557          |
| LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT                           |                          |    |                    |
| Current liabilities   |                          |    |                    |
| Accounts payable  | \$<br>599,639            | \$ | 847,452            |
| Accrued expenses  | 287,566                  |    | 251,613            |
| Revolving financing   | 545,805                  |    | 475,273            |
| Current portion of capital leases                               | 253,399                  |    | 243,623            |
| Note payable, net of debt discount                              | 64,957                   |    | 283,120            |
| Note payable with original issue discount, net of debt discount | 16,497                   |    | 41,248             |
| Derivative liability  | 6,837                    |    | 11,143             |
|   |                          |    |                    |
| Total current liabilities                                       | 1,774,700                |    | 2,153,472          |
| Long-term Liabilities   |                          |    |                    |
| Capitalized leases  | 53,820                   |    | 95,204             |
|   | 00,020                   |    | , , , , , , ,      |
| Total long-term liabilities                                     | 53,820                   |    | 95,204             |
| Total long-term natmities                                       | 33,620                   |    | 9J,2U <del>4</del> |
| Total liabilities   | \$<br>1,828,520          | \$ | 2,248,676          |
|   |                          |    |                    |

| Stockholders' deficit  |                    |              |
|--|--------------------|--------------|
| Preferred stock, \$0.001 par value, 100,000,000 shares authorized, Series      | 23,000             | 23,000       |
| A issued 20,000,000,   |                    |              |
| Series C issued 3,000,000  |                    |              |
| Common stock, Class A - \$0.001 par value, 22,500,000 shares                   |                    |              |
| authorized 15,239,672 and  | 15,238             | 14,568       |
| 14,568,970 shares issued and outstanding at June 30, 2016 and March            |                    |              |
| 31, 2016, respectively   |                    |              |
| Additional paid in capital   | 22,230,302         | 21,423,247   |
| Accumulated deficit  | (20,947,565)       | (19,933,934) |
|  |                    |              |
|  |                    |              |
| Total stockholders' deficit  | 1,320,975          | 1,526,881    |
|  |                    |              |
| Total liabilities and stockholders' deficit                                    | \$ 3,149,495       | \$ 3,775,557 |
| The accompanying notes are an integral part of these condensed consolidated fi | inancial statement | S.           |

# THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC. CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF OPERATIONS (unaudited)

|   | For the quarter ended |              |    | ended         |
|---|-----------------------|--------------|----|---------------|
|   | Jı                    | une 30, 2016 | -  | June 30, 2015 |
| Revenue                                     | \$                    | 2,946,749    | \$ | 1,513,578     |
| Cost of Goods Sold                          |                       | 1,790,713    |    | 976,804       |
| Gross Profit                                |                       | 1,156,036    |    | 536,774       |
| Operating expenses                          |                       |              |    |               |
| Sales and marketing expenses                |                       | 1,085,999    |    | 626,681       |
| General and administrative                  |                       | 840,774      |    | 1,151,540     |
| Depreciation                                |                       | 89,439       |    | 71,029        |
|   |                       |              |    |               |
| Total operating expenses                    |                       | 2,016,212    |    | 1,849,250     |
| Total operating loss                        |                       | (860,176)    |    | (1,312,476)   |
| Other income (expense)                      |                       |              |    |               |
| Interest income                             |                       | 98           |    | -             |
| Interest expense                            |                       | (112,601)    |    | (67,407)      |
| Amortization of debt discount and accretion |                       | (45,258)     |    | (6,583)       |
| Change in derivative liability              |                       | 4,306        |    | (168,164)     |
|   |                       |              |    |               |
| Total other income (expense)                |                       | (153,455)    |    | (242,154)     |
| Net loss                                    | \$                    | (1,013,631)  | \$ | (1,554,630)   |
| EARNINGS PER SHARE (Basic)                  | \$                    | (0.07)       | \$ | (0.59)        |
| WEIGHTED AVERAGE SHARES OUTSTANDING (Basic) |                       | 14,716,285   |    | 2,637,401     |

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these condensed consolidated financial statements.

# THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC. CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS (unaudited)

|                   |  | For the quarter ended |                            |    | ıded                |
|-------------------|--|-----------------------|----------------------------|----|---------------------|
|                   |  | Jı                    | ıne 30, 2016               |    | June 30, 2015       |
| CASH FLOWS        | FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES                            |                       |                            |    |                     |
| Net               | loss   | \$                    | (1,013,631)                | \$ | (1,554,630)         |
|                   |  |                       |                            |    |                     |
| Adj               | ustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in   |                       |                            |    |                     |
| operating         |  |                       |                            |    |                     |
|                   | Depreciation expense                                 |                       | 89,439                     |    | 71,029              |
|                   | Stock compensation expense                           |                       | 142,625                    |    | 642,872             |
|                   | Amortization of debt discount and accretion          |                       | 79,049                     |    | 6,583               |
|                   | Interest expense relating to amortization of capital |                       | 25,752                     |    | 25,524              |
| lease discount    | ~  |                       | 44.50.5                    |    |                     |
|                   | Change in derivative liabilities                     |                       | (4,306)                    |    | 168,164             |
|                   | Changes in operating assets and liabilities:         |                       | ( <b>-</b> - <b>-</b> - 1) |    | (== = )             |
|                   | Accounts receivable                                  |                       | (26,561)                   |    | (73,213)            |
|                   | Inventory  |                       | (74,492)                   |    | (18,766)            |
|                   | Prepaid expenses and other current assets            |                       | 206                        |    | -                   |
|                   | Accounts payable                                     |                       | (247,813)                  |    | 197,933             |
|                   | Accounts payable - related party                     |                       | -                          |    | (43,036)            |
|                   | Accrued expenses                                     |                       | 35,953                     |    | 10,563              |
|                   |  |                       |                            |    |                     |
|                   |  |                       |                            |    |                     |
|                   | NET CASH USED IN OPERATING                           |                       | (993,779)                  |    | (566,977)           |
| ACTIVITIES        |  |                       |                            |    |                     |
| G + GYY FT - GYYY |  |                       |                            |    |                     |
| CASH FLOWS        | FROM INVESTING ACTIVITIES                            |                       | (40.040)                   |    | (2.0.50)            |
|                   | Purchase of fixed assets                             |                       | (49,310)                   |    | (2,850)             |
|                   | Equipment Deposits - related party                   |                       | (67,619)                   |    | (24,998)            |
|                   |  |                       |                            |    |                     |
|                   |  |                       | (116.000)                  |    | (25.040)            |
|                   | CASH USED IN INVESTING ACTIVITIES                    |                       | (116,929)                  |    | (27,848)            |
|                   |  |                       |                            |    |                     |
| CASH FLOWS        | FROM FINANCING ACTIVITIES                            |                       | 260,000                    |    | 2 7 2 2 2 2         |
|                   | Proceeds from notes payable                          |                       | 260,000                    |    | 250,000             |
|                   | Proceeds from convertible note payable               |                       | -                          |    | 50,000              |
|                   | Proceeds from revolving financing                    |                       | 70,532                     |    | (34,005)            |
|                   | Proceeds from sale of common stock, net              |                       | 425,000                    |    | 480,800             |
|                   | Repayment of notes payable                           |                       | (341,863)                  |    | - (10.1-0)          |
|                   | Repayment of capital lease                           |                       | (57,360)                   |    | (48,128)            |
|                   |  |                       |                            |    |                     |
|                   | GLOW PROLUBER BY THE STATE OF THE                    |                       | 0.5.6.200                  |    | 600 66 <del>2</del> |
| A CODY MENT       | CASH PROVIDED BY FINANCING                           |                       | 356,309                    |    | 698,667             |
| ACTIVITIES        |  |                       |                            |    |                     |
| NET CITARIO       | ADJ CACII  |                       | (754.200)                  |    | 102.042             |
| NET CHANGE        | LIN CASH   |                       | (754,399)                  |    | 103,842             |

Edgar Filing: ALKALINE WATER Co INC - Form 424B3

|                  | 1,192,119                    |                         | 90,113        |
|------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| \$               | 437,720                      | \$                      | 193,955       |
| \$<br>l consolid | 19,162<br>ated financial sta | \$ atements.            | 30,167        |
|                  | \$<br>\$<br>I consolid       | \$ 437,720<br>\$ 19,162 | \$ 437,720 \$ |

#### THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC.

## NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (unaudited)

#### NOTE 1 SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

#### Basis of presentation

The consolidated financial statements included herein have been prepared by the Company, without audit, pursuant to the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission. Certain information and footnote disclosures normally included in financial statements prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles have been omitted. However, in the opinion of management, all adjustments (which include only normal recurring adjustments, unless otherwise indicated) necessary to present fairly the financial position and results of operations for the periods presented have been made. The results for interim periods are not necessarily indicative of trends or of results to be expected for the full year. These financial statements should be read in conjunction with the financial statements of the Company for the year ended March 31, 2016 (including the notes thereto) set forth on Form 10-K. The Company uses as guidance the Accounting Standard Codification (ASC) as established by the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB).

#### Principles of consolidation

The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of The Alkaline Water Company Inc. (a Nevada Corporation), Alkaline Water Corp. (an Arizona Corporation) and Alkaline 88, LLC (an Arizona Limited Liability Company).

All significant intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated. The Alkaline Water Company Inc. (a Nevada Corporation), Alkaline Water Corp. (an Arizona Corporation) and Alkaline 88, LLC (an Arizona Limited Liability Company) will be collectively referred herein to as the Company. Any reference herein to The Alkaline Water Company Inc., the Company, we, our or us is intended to mean The Alkaline Water Company Inc., includes subsidiaries indicated above, unless otherwise indicated.

#### Reverse split

Effective December 30, 2015, the Company effected a fifty for one reverse stock split of its authorized and issued and outstanding shares of common stock. As a result, the authorized common stock has decreased from 1,125,000,000 shares of common stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share, to 22,500,000 shares of common stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share. All shares and per share amounts have been retroactively restated to reflect such split.

On January 21, 2016, stockholders of our company approved, by written consents, an amendment to the articles of incorporation of our company to increase the number of authorized shares of our common stock from 22,500,000 to 200,000,000.

The Company received written consents representing 20,776,000 votes from the holders of shares of its common stock and our Series A Preferred Stock voting as a single class, representing approximately 61% of the voting power of its outstanding common stock and its outstanding Series A Preferred Stock voting as a single class as of the record date (January 12, 2016). On January 21, 2016, there were no written consents received by the Company representing a vote against, abstention or broker non-vote with respect to the proposal.

Our authorized preferred stock was not affected by the reverse stock split and continues to be 100,000,000 shares of preferred stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share. In addition, the number of issued and outstanding shares of Series A Preferred Stock continues to be 20,000,000. However, holders of Series A Preferred Stock had 0.2 vote per share of Series A Preferred Stock, instead of 10 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock, as a result of the reverse stock split.

On January 22, 2016, the Company amended the certificate of designation for our Series A Preferred Stock by filing an amendment to certificate of designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada. The Company amended the certificate of designation for our Series A Preferred Stock by deleting Section 2.2 of the certificate of designation, which proportionately increases or decreases the number of votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock in the event of any dividend or other distribution on our common stock payable in its common stock or a subdivision or consolidation of the outstanding shares of its common stock. Accordingly, holders of Series A Preferred Stock will have 10 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock, instead of 0.2 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock.

#### Use of estimates

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ significantly from those estimates.

#### Cash and cash equivalents

The Company considers all highly liquid instruments with an original maturity of three months or less to be considered cash equivalents. The carrying value of these investments approximates fair value. The Company had \$437,750 and \$193,955 in cash and cash equivalents at June 30, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

#### Accounts receivable and allowance for doubtful accounts

The Company generally does not require collateral, and the majority of its trade receivables are unsecured. The carrying amount for accounts receivable approximates fair value.

Accounts receivable are periodically evaluated for collectability based on past credit history with clients. Provisions for losses on accounts receivable are determined on the basis of loss experience, known and inherent risk in the account balance and current economic conditions.

#### *Inventory*

Inventory represents raw and blended chemicals and other items valued at the lower of cost or market with cost determined using the weight average method which approximates first-in first-out method, and with market defined as the lower of replacement cost or realizable value.

As of June 30, 2016 and March, 31 2016, inventory consisted of the following:

|                 | Jur | ne 30, 2016 | Ma | arch 31, 2016 |
|-----------------|-----|-------------|----|---------------|
| Raw materials   | \$  | 359,466     | \$ | 300,575       |
| Finished goods  |     | 149,734     |    | 134,133       |
| Total inventory | \$  | 509,200     | \$ | 434,708       |

#### Property and equipment

The Company records all property and equipment at cost less accumulated depreciation. Improvements are capitalized while repairs and maintenance costs are expensed as incurred. Depreciation is calculated using the straight-line method over the estimated useful life of the assets or the lease term, whichever is shorter. Depreciation periods are as follows for the relevant fixed assets:

Equipment 5 years

Equipment under capital lease 3 years or term of the lease

#### Stock-based Compensation

The Company accounts for stock-based compensation to employees in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification (ASC) 718. Stock-based compensation to employees is measured at the grant date, based on the fair value of the award, and is recognized as expense over the requisite employee service period. The Company accounts for stock-based compensation to other than employees in accordance with ASC 505-50. Equity instruments issued to other than employees are valued at the earlier of a commitment date or upon completion of the services, based on the fair value of the equity instruments and is recognized as expense over the service period. The Company estimates the fair value of stock-based payments using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model for common stock options and warrants and the closing price of the Company s common stock for common share issuances.

#### Revenue recognition

The Company recognizes revenue when all of the following conditions are satisfied: (1) there is persuasive evidence of an arrangement; (2) the product or service has been provided to the customer; (3) the amount to be paid by the customer is fixed or determinable; and (4) the collection of such amount is probable.

The Company records revenue when it is realizable and earned upon shipment of the finished products. The Company does not accept returns due to the nature of the product. However, the Company will provide credit to our customers for damaged goods.

#### Fair value measurements

The valuation of our embedded derivatives and warrant derivatives are determined primarily by the multinomial distribution (Lattice) model. An embedded derivative is a derivative instrument that is embedded within another contract, which under the convertible note (the host contract) includes the right to convert the note by the holder, certain default redemption right premiums and a change of control premium (payable in cash if a fundamental change occurs). In accordance with ASC 815 Accounting for Derivative Instruments and Hedging Activities , as amended, these embedded derivatives are marked-to-market each reporting period, with a corresponding non-cash gain or loss charged to the current period. A warrant derivative liability is also determined in accordance with ASC 815. Based on ASC 815, warrants which are determined to be classified as derivative liabilities are marked-to-market each reporting period, with a corresponding non-cash gain or loss charged to the current period. The practical effect of this has been that when our stock price increases so does our derivative liability resulting in a non-cash loss charge that reduces our earnings and earnings per share. When our stock price declines, the Company records a non-cash gain, increasing our earnings and earnings per share. As such, fair value is a market-based measurement that should be determined based on assumptions that market participants would use in pricing an asset or liability. As a basis for considering such assumptions, there exists a three-tier fair value hierarchy, which prioritizes the inputs used in measuring fair value as follows:

- Level 1 unadjusted quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities that the Company has the ability to access as of the measurement date.
- Level 2 inputs other than quoted prices included within Level 1 that are directly observable for the asset or liability or indirectly observable through corroboration with observable market data.

Level 3 unobservable inputs for the asset or liability only used when there is little, if any, market activity for the asset or liability at the measurement date.

This hierarchy requires the Company to use observable market data, when available, and to minimize the use of unobservable inputs when determining fair value.

To determine the fair value of our embedded derivatives, management evaluates assumptions regarding the probability of certain future events. Other factors used to determine fair value include our period end stock price, historical stock volatility, risk free interest rate and derivative term. The fair value recorded for the derivative liability varies from period to period. This variability may result in the actual derivative liability for a period either above or below the estimates recorded on our consolidated financial statements, resulting in significant fluctuations in other income (expense) because of the corresponding non-cash gain or loss recorded.

#### Income taxes

In accordance with ASC 740 Accounting for Income Taxes , the provision for income taxes is computed using the asset and liability method. Under the asset and liability method, deferred income tax assets and liabilities are determined based on the differences between the financial reporting and tax bases of assets and liabilities and are measured using the currently enacted tax rates and laws. A valuation allowance is provided for the amount of deferred tax assets that, based on available evidence, are not expected to be realized.

#### Basic and diluted loss per share

Basic and diluted earnings or loss per share (EPS) amounts in the consolidated financial statements are computed in accordance ASC 260 10 Earnings per Share, which establishes the requirements for presenting EPS. Basic EPS is based on the weighted average number of common shares outstanding. Diluted EPS is based on the weighted average number of common shares outstanding and dilutive common stock equivalents. Basic EPS is computed by dividing net income or loss available to common stockholders (numerator) by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding (denominator) during the period. Potentially dilutive securities were excluded from the calculation of diluted loss per share, because their effect would be anti-dilutive.

#### Reclassification

Certain accounts in the prior period were reclassified to conform to the current period financial statements presentation.

#### Newly issued accounting pronouncements

During the period ended June 30, 2016, there were several new accounting pronouncements issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board. Each of these pronouncements, as applicable, has been or will be adopted by the Company. Management does not believe the adoption of any of these accounting pronouncements has had or will have a material impact on the Company s consolidated financial statements

#### NOTE 2 GOING CONCERN

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern, which contemplates the recoverability and/or acquisition and sale of assets and the satisfaction of liabilities in the normal course of business. Since its inception, the Company has been engaged substantially in financing activities, developing its business plan and building its initial customer and distribution base for its products. As a result, the Company incurred accumulated net losses from Inception (June 19, 2012) through the period ended June 30, 2016 of (\$20,947,565). In addition, the Company s development activities since inception have been financially

sustained through debt and equity financing.

The ability of the Company to continue as a going concern is dependent upon its ability to raise additional capital from the sale of common stock and, ultimately, the achievement of significant operating revenues. These financial statements do not include any adjustments relating to the recoverability and classification of recorded asset amounts, or amounts and classification of liabilities that might result from this uncertainty.

#### NOTE 3 PROPERTY AND EQUIPMENT

Fixed assets consisted of the following at:

|                                | June 30, 2016 |           | March | 31, 2016  |
|--------------------------------|---------------|-----------|-------|-----------|
|                                |               |           |       |           |
| Machinery and Equipment        | \$            | 1,015,728 | \$    | 970,728   |
| Machinery under Capital Lease  |               | 735,781   |       | 735,781   |
| Office Equipment               |               | 57,941    |       | 53,631    |
| Leasehold Improvements         |               | 3,979     |       | 3,979     |
|                                |               |           |       |           |
| Less: Accumulated Depreciation |               | (627,024) |       | (537,585) |
| Fixed Assets, net              | \$            | 1,186,405 | \$    | 1,226,534 |

Depreciation expense for the years ended June 30, 2016 and June 30 2015 was \$89,439 and \$71,029, respectively.

#### NOTE 4 EQUIPMENT DEPOSITS RELATED PARTY

During the three month period ending June 30, 2016 the company made a net deposit on equipment of \$67,619 to Water Engineering Solutions. During the three month period ending June 30, 2015 the company made a net deposit on equipment of \$24,998 to Water Engineering Solutions. Water Engineering Solutions LLC is an entity that is controlled and majority owned by Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright for the production of our alkaline water.

#### NOTE 5 REVOLVING FINANCING

On February 20, 2014, The Alkaline Water Company Inc., and subsidiaries, Alkaline 88, LLC and Alkaline Water Corp., entered into a revolving accounts receivable funding agreement with Gibraltar Business Capital, LLC (Gibraltar). Under the agreement, from time to time, the Company agreed to tender to Gibraltar all of our accounts (which is defined as our rights to payment whether or not earned by performance, (i) for property that has been or is to be sold, leased, licensed, assigned or otherwise disposed of, or (ii) for services rendered or to be rendered, or (iii) as otherwise defined in the Uniform Commercial Code of the State of Illinois). Gibraltar will have the right, but will not be obligated, to purchase such accounts tendered in its sole discretion. If Gibraltar purchases such accounts, Gibraltar will make cash advances to us as the purchase price for the purchased accounts.

The Company assumed full risk of non-payment and unconditionally guaranteed the full and prompt payment of the full face amount of all purchased accounts. The Company also agreed to direct all parties obligated to pay the accounts to send all payments for all accounts directly to Gibraltar. All collections from accounts will be applied to our indebtedness, which is defined as the amount owed by us to Gibraltar from time to time, i.e., all cash advances, plus all charges, plus all other amounts owning from us to Gibraltar pursuant to the agreement, less all collections retained by Gibraltar from either purchased accounts or from us which are applied to indebtedness, unless Gibraltar elects to hold any such collections to establish reserves to secure payment of any purchased accounts.

In consideration of Gibraltar s purchase of the accounts, the Company agreed to pay Gibraltar interest on the indebtedness outstanding at the rate of 8% per annum plus the prime rate in effect at the end of each month with the prime rate for these purposes never being less than 3.25% per annum, calculated on a 360-day year and payable monthly. In addition, the Company agreed to pay to Gibraltar a monthly collateral/management fee in the amount of 0.5% calculated on the average daily borrowing amount for the given month and an unused line fee of 0.25% monthly based on the difference between the actual line of credit and the average daily borrowing amount for the given month. The Company also agreed to pay to Gibraltar upon execution of the agreement and as of the commencement of each renewal term, a closing cost of 1% of the initial indebtedness in addition to the amount of any other credit accommodations granted from Gibraltar, which amount will be deducted from the first cash advances.

The initial indebtedness is \$500,000 and the Company increased the amount available under the revolving accounts receivable funding agreement to \$900,000 on May 12, 2016. The Company may request further increase(s) to the in \$100,000 increments up to \$5,000,000, subject the Company s financial performance and/or projections are satisfactory to Gibraltar, and absent an event of default. The Company also granted to Gibraltar a security interest in all of our presently-owned and hereafter-acquired personal and fixture property, wherever located. The agreement will continue until the first to occur of (i) demand by Gibraltar; or (ii) 24 months from the first day of the month following the date that the first purchased account is purchased and will be automatically renewed for successive periods of 12 months thereafter unless, at least 30 days prior to the end of the term, the Company gives Gibraltar notice of our intention to terminate the agreement. In addition, the Company will be able to exit the agreement at any time for a fee of 2% of the line of credit in place at the time of prepayment. On June 30, 2016 the amount borrowed on this facility was \$545,805.

#### NOTE 6 DERIVATIVE LIABILITY

On November 7, 2013, the Company sold to certain institutional investors 10% Series B Convertible Preferred Shares which are subject to mandatory redemption and include down-round provisions that reduce the exercise price of a warrant and convertible instrument. As required by ASC 815 Derivatives and Hedging, if the Company either issues equity shares for a price that is lower than the exercise price of those instruments or issues new warrants or convertible instruments that have a lower exercise price, the investors will be entitled to down-round protection. The Company evaluated whether its warrants and convertible debt instruments contain provisions that protect holders from declines in its stock price or otherwise could result in modification of either the exercise price or the shares to be issued under the respective warrant agreements. The Company determined that a portion of its outstanding warrants and conversion instruments contained such provisions thereby concluding they were not indexed to the Company s own stock and therefore a derivative instrument.

Between April 16, 2014 and April 24, 2014, the Company redeemed 247 shares of the 10% Series B Preferred Stock for \$247,171 plus accrued interest of \$46,456 and a \$10,212 penalty related to the delayed registration. The effect of this redemption resulted in a reduction of \$56,098 derivative liability.

On May 1, 2014, the Company completed the offering and sale of an aggregate of 346,667 shares of our common stock and warrants to purchase an aggregate of 173,333 shares of our common stock, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$2,599,999. Each share of common stock sold in the offering was accompanied by a warrant to purchase one-half of a share of common stock at an exercise price of \$7.50 per share for a period of five years from the date of issuance. Each share of common stock, together with each warrant was sold at a price of \$7.50. The warrants include down-round provisions that reduce the exercise price of a warrant and convertible instrument. As required by ASC 815 Derivatives and Hedging, if the Company either issues equity shares for a price that is lower than the exercise price of those instruments or issues new warrants or convertible instruments that have a lower exercise price, the investors will be entitled to down-round protection. The Company evaluated whether its warrants and convertible debt instruments contain provisions that protect holders from declines in its stock price or otherwise could result in modification of either the exercise price or the shares to be issued under the respective warrant agreements. The Company determined that a portion of its outstanding warrants and conversion instruments contained such provisions

thereby concluding were not indexed to the Company s own stock and therefore a derivative instrument.

On August 20, 2014, the Company entered into a warrant amendment agreement with certain holders of the Company s outstanding common stock purchase warrants whereby the Company agreed to reduce the exercise price of the Existing Warrants to \$5.00 per share in consideration for the immediate exercise of the Existing Warrants by the Holders and the Holders are to be issued new common stock purchase warrants of the Company in the form of the Existing Warrants to purchase up to a number of shares of our common stock equal to the number of Existing Warrants exercised by the Holders, provided that the exercise price of the New Warrants will be \$6.25 per share, subject to adjustment in the New Warrants. Each New Warrant has a term of five years from the date of issuance. Each share of common stock, together with each warrant was sold at a price of \$6.25. The warrants include down-round provisions that reduce the exercise price of a warrant and convertible instrument. As required by ASC 815 Derivatives and Hedging, if the Company either issues equity shares for a price that is lower than the exercise price of those instruments or issues new warrants or convertible instruments that have a lower exercise price, the investors will be entitled to down-round protection. The Company evaluated whether its warrants and convertible debt instruments contain provisions that protect holders from declines in its stock price or otherwise could result in modification of either the exercise price or the shares to be issued under the respective warrant agreements. The Company determined that a portion of its outstanding warrants and conversion instruments contained such provisions thereby concluding they were not indexed to the Company s own stock and therefore a derivative instrument. The derivative liability was increased by \$167,384 as a result of the issued warrants.

On August 21, 2014, pursuant to the Warrant Amendment Agreement, the Company issued an aggregate of 196,589 shares of the Company s common stock upon exercise of the Existing Warrants at an exercise price of \$5.00 per share for aggregate gross proceeds of \$982,945. An aggregate of 173,333shares of our common stock issued upon exercise of the Existing Warrants. The derivative liability was reduced by \$168,273 as a result of the warrants exercised.

Pursuant to the engagement agreement dated March 12, 2014 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (Wainwright), Wainwright agreed to act as our exclusive placement agent in connection with the offering. Pursuant to the engagement agreement, the Company, the Company issued warrants to purchase an aggregate of 5.5% of the aggregate number of shares of our common stock sold in the offering, or 19,067 to Wainwright and its designees. These warrants have an exercise price of \$9.38 per share and expire on April 16, 2019. The warrants include down-round provisions that reduce the exercise price of a warrant and convertible instrument. As required by ASC Derivatives and Hedging, if the Company either issues equity shares for a price that is lower than the exercise price of those instruments or issues new warrants or convertible instruments that have a lower exercise price, the investors will be entitled to down-round protection. The Company evaluated whether its warrants and convertible debt instruments contain provisions that protect holders from declines in its stock price or otherwise could result in modification of either the exercise price or the shares to be issued under the respective warrant agreements. The Company determined that a portion of its outstanding warrants and conversion instruments contained such provisions thereby concluding they were not indexed to the Company s own stock and therefore a derivative instrument.

The range of significant assumptions which the Company used to measure the fair value of warrant liabilities (a level 3 input) at April 24, 2014 is as follows:

|                 | Conve | rsion feature |
|-----------------|-------|---------------|
| Stock price     | \$    | 16 .3275      |
| Term (Years)    |       | Less than 1   |
| Volatility      |       | 331%          |
| Exercise prices | \$    | 21.50         |
| Dividend yield  |       | 0%            |

The range of significant assumptions which the Company used to measure the fair value of warrant liabilities (a level 3 input) at May 1, 2014 is as follows:

|                 | Issi | uance Warrants | Pla | ncement Agent<br>Warrants |
|-----------------|------|----------------|-----|---------------------------|
| G. 1            | ф.   |                | ф   |                           |
| Stock price     | \$   | 7. 50          | \$  | 7. 50                     |
| Term (Years)    |      | 5              |     | 5                         |
| Volatility      |      | 306%           |     | 306%                      |
| Exercise prices | \$   | 7. 50          | \$  | 9.375                     |
| Dividend yield  |      | 0%             |     | 0%                        |

The range of significant assumptions which the Company used to measure the fair value of warrant liabilities (a level 3 input) at August 20, 2014 is as follows:

|                 |              | New     |
|-----------------|--------------|---------|
|                 | $\mathbf{W}$ | arrants |
| Stock price     | \$           | 6.00    |
| Term (Years)    |              | 5       |
| Volatility      |              | 247%    |
| Exercise prices | \$           | 6.50    |
| Dividend yield  |              | 0%      |

The range of significant assumptions which the Company used to measure the fair value of warrant liabilities (a level 3 input) at August 21, 2014 is as follows:

|                 | Existing |         |  |
|-----------------|----------|---------|--|
|                 | Wa       | arrants |  |
| Stock price     | \$       | 8.50    |  |
| Term (Years)    |          | 5       |  |
| Volatility      |          | 247%    |  |
| Exercise prices | \$       | 5.00    |  |
| Dividend yield  |          | 0%      |  |

During the year ended March 31, 2016, certain Warrant holders from the August 21, 2014 Warrant Amendment Agreement exercised their warrants via a cashless exercise where-in 54,154 warrants were tendered, the shareholders received 26,976 shares and the shareholders forfeited 27,178 warrants. The Company reduced the derivative liability \$62,986.

During the year ended March 31, 2016, certain Warrant holders from the August 21, 2014 Warrant Amendment Agreement and the Company agreed to exchange 133,791 warrants for 133,791 shares of common stock and the Company reduced the derivative liability by \$76,843.

During the year ended March 31, 2016 the Company issued shares of stock at \$3.50 which reduced the exercise price of the Existing Warrants.

The following table sets forth the fair value hierarchy within our financial assets and liabilities by level that were accounted for at fair value on a recurring basis as of May 1, 2014.

|                              | Fair Value Measurement at May 1, 2014 |                                    |    |         |    |         |    |         |  |  |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|----|---------|----|---------|----|---------|--|--|
|                              | •                                     | Carrying<br>Value at<br>ay 1, 2014 |    | Level 1 |    | Level 2 |    | Level 3 |  |  |
| Liabilities:                 |                                       |                                    |    |         |    |         |    |         |  |  |
|                              |                                       |                                    |    |         |    |         |    |         |  |  |
| Derivative warrant liability | \$                                    | 216,236                            | \$ | -       | \$ | -       | \$ | 216,236 |  |  |
|                              | \$                                    | 23,787                             | \$ | -       | \$ | -       | \$ | 23,787  |  |  |

Derivative placement agent warrant

liability

Total derivative liability \$ 240,023 \$ - \$ 240,023

The following table sets forth the fair value hierarchy added to our financial liabilities by level that were accounted for at fair value on a recurring basis as of August 21, 2014.

#### Fair Value Measurement at August 21, 2014

|                                 | Carrying<br>Value at<br>August 21, 2014 | Level | 1 | Level 2 | 8  | Level 3 |
|---------------------------------|---|-------|---|---------|----|---------|
| Liabilities:                    |   |       |   |         |    |         |
|                                 |   |       |   |         |    |         |
| Derivative warrant liability \$ | 149.687                                 | \$    | _ | \$<br>- | \$ | 149,687 |

The following table sets forth the fair value hierarchy within our financial assets and liabilities by level that were accounted for at fair value on a recurring basis as of March 31, 2016.

| Fair Value Measurement at March 31, 2010 |
|--|
|--|

|  | Va | rrying<br>due at<br>n 31, 2015 | Level 1 | Level 2 | Level 3      |
|--|----|--------------------------------|---------|---------|--------------|
| Liabilities:   |    |                                |         |         |              |
|  |    |                                |         |         |              |
| Derivative convertible debt liability  | \$ | -                              | \$<br>- | \$<br>- | \$<br>-      |
| Derivative warrant liability convertible preferred stock   | \$ | 8,291                          | \$<br>- | \$<br>- | \$<br>8,291  |
| Derivative warrants liability on<br>common stock issuance<br>including placement agent<br>warrants | \$ | 2,852                          | \$<br>- | \$<br>- | \$<br>2,852  |
| Total derivative liability   | \$ | 11,143                         | \$<br>- | \$<br>- | \$<br>11,143 |

The following table sets forth the fair value hierarchy within our financial assets and liabilities by level that were accounted for at fair value on a recurring basis as of June 30, 2016.

Carrying

#### Fair Value Measurement at June 30, 2016

|  | Value :<br>June 30, | at    | Level 1 |   | Level | 2 | Level 3     |
|--|---------------------|-------|---------|---|-------|---|-------------|
| Liabilities:   |                     |       |         |   |       |   |             |
|  |                     |       |         |   |       |   |             |
| Derivative convertible debt liabilit                             | y\$                 | -     | \$      | - | \$    | - | \$<br>-     |
| Derivative warrant liability convertible preferred stock         | \$                  | 4,457 | \$      | - | \$    | - | \$<br>4,457 |
| Derivative warrants liability on common stock issuance including | \$                  | 2,380 | \$      | - | \$    | - | \$<br>2,380 |
| placement agent warrants   |                     |       |         |   |       |   |             |
| Total derivative liability                                       | \$                  | 6,837 | \$      | _ | \$    | _ | \$<br>6,837 |

The Company analyzed the warrants and conversion feature under ASC 815 Derivatives and Hedging to determine the derivative liability. The Company estimated the fair value of these derivatives using a multinomial distribution (Lattice) valuation model. The fair value of these warrant liabilities at March 31, 2016 was \$11,143 and the conversion feature liability was \$0. At June 30, 2016 the fair value of these warrant liabilities was \$6,847 and the conversion feature liability was \$0. Changes in the derivative liability for the period ended June 30, 2016 consist of:

#### Three Months Ended June 30, 2016

|   | Jui | ic 30, 2010 |
|---|-----|-------------|
| Derivative liability at March 31, 2016        | \$  | 11,143      |
| Change in derivative liability mark to market |     | (4,306)     |
| Derivative liability at June 30, 2016         | \$  | 6,837       |

#### NOTE 7 PREFERRED SHARES SUBJECT TO MANDATORY REDEMPTION

#### Convertible preferred shares

On November 7, 2013, the Company sold to certain institutional investors an aggregate of 500 shares of our 10% Series B Convertible Preferred Stock (Series B Preferred Stock) at a stated value of \$1,000 per share of Series B Preferred Stock for gross proceeds of \$500,000. Additionally the investors also received Series A, Series B and Series C common stock purchase warrants. The Series A warrants will be exercisable into 23,256 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$27.50 per share, the Series B warrants will be exercisable into 23,256 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$21.50 per share and the Series C warrants will be exercisable into 23,256 shares our common stock at an exercise price of \$27.50 per share. Holders of the Series B Preferred Stock will be entitled to receive cumulative dividends at the rate per share (as a percentage of the stated value per share) of 10% per annum, payable semi-annually. Each share of the Series B Preferred Stock will be convertible at the option of the holder thereof into that number of shares of common stock determined by dividing the stated value of such share of the Series B Preferred Stock by the conversion price of \$21.50, subject to later adjustment. On November 4, 2013, the Company also entered into a registration rights agreement with the investors pursuant to which the Company was obligated to file a registration statement to register the resale of the shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of the Series B Preferred Stock and upon exercise of the Warrants.

Between April 16, 2014 and April 22, 2014, the holders of our Series B Preferred Stock exercised their right to have the Company redeem their shares whereby the Company redeemed 247.17 shares of Series B Preferred Stock for \$303,839, which included accrued interest of \$46,456 and a penalty for late registration of \$10,212. The remaining portion of the Series B Preferred Stock, or 252.83 shares, was converted into 15,931 of our common shares at a conversion price of \$15.87 per share.

Effective November 7, 2013, the Company issued common stock purchase warrants to the placement agent and its designees as compensation for the services provided by the placement agent in connection with our private placement of 500.00028 shares Series B Preferred Stock, which was completed on November 7, 2013. The warrants issued to the placement agent and its designees are exercisable into an aggregate of 2,326 shares of our common stock with an exercise price of \$27.50 per share and have a term of exercise of five years. The Company issued the warrants to six accredited investors and paid certain transactional costs of \$78,000. For the period ended December 31, 2014 the Company recorded \$54,288 of amortization of the debt discount and deferred financing cost.

The Series B Preferred Stock included down-round provisions that reduce the exercise price of a warrant and convertible instrument as required by ASC 815 Derivatives and Hedging . The aggregate of the derivative liability at issuance was \$955,927, which was recorded as amortization of debt discount at issuance and amortized \$360,082 cost over the redemption period.

#### NOTE 8 STOCKHOLDERS EQUITY

#### Preferred shares

On October 7, 2013, the Company amended its articles of incorporation to create 100,000,000 shares of preferred stock by filing a Certificate of Amendment to Articles of Incorporation with the Secretary of State of Nevada. The preferred stock may be divided into and issued in series, with such designations, rights, qualifications, preferences, limitations and terms as fixed and determined by our board of directors. The Series A Preferred Stock had 10 votes per share (reduced to 0.2 votes per share as a result of the fifty for one reverse stock split, which became effective as of December 30, 2015) and are not convertible into shares of our common stock. The Series B Convertible Preferred shares have 1,000 shares of our authorized preferred stock are designated as 10% Series B Convertible Preferred Stock , which have a stated value of \$1,000 per share and have liquidation preferences, dividend rights, redemption rights and conversion rights, of which none were issued at March 31, 2016.

#### Grant of series A preferred stock

On October 8, 2013, the Company issued a total of 20,000,000 shares of non-convertible Series A Preferred Stock to Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (10,000,000 shares to each), our directors and executive officers, in consideration for the past services, at a deemed value of \$0.001 per share. The company valued these shares based on the cost considering the time and average billing rate of these individuals and recorded a \$20,000 stock compensation cost for the year ended March 31, 2014.

Our authorized preferred stock was not affected by the reverse stock split and continues to be 100,000,000 shares of preferred stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share. In addition, the number of issued and outstanding shares of Series A Preferred Stock continues to be 20,000,000. However, holders of Series A Preferred Stock had 0.2 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock, instead of 10 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock, as a result of the reverse-stock split.

On January 22, 2016, the Company amended the certificate of designation for our Series A Preferred Stock by filing an amendment to certificate of designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada. The Company amended the certificate of designation for our Series A Preferred Stock by deleting Section 2.2 of the certificate of designation, which proportionately increases or decreases the number of votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock in the event of any dividend or other distribution on our common stock payable in its common stock or a subdivision or consolidation of the outstanding shares of its common stock. Accordingly, holders of Series A Preferred Stock will have 10 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock, instead of 0.2 votes per share of Series A Preferred Stock.

#### Grant of series C Convertible preferred stock

On March 30, 2016, the Company designated 3,000,000 shares of the authorized and unissued preferred stock of our company as Series C Preferred Stock by filing a Certificate of Designation with the Secretary of State of the State of Nevada. Each share of the Series C Preferred Stock will be convertible, without the payment of any additional consideration by the holder and at the option of the holder, into one fully paid and non-assessable share of our common stock at any time after (i) the Company achieves consolidated revenue equal to or greater than \$15,000,000 in any 12 month period, ending on the last day of any quarterly period of our fiscal year; or (ii) a Negotiated Trigger Event, defined as an event upon which the Series C Preferred Stock will be convertible as may be agreed by our company and the holder in writing from time to time.

Effective March 31, 2016, the Company issued a total of 3,000,000 shares of our Series C Preferred Stock to Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (1,500,000 shares to each), our directors and executive officers, pursuant to their employment agreements dated effective March 1, 2016.

The Company is authorized to issue 1,125,000,000 shares of \$0.001 par value common stock. On May 31, 2013, the Company affected a 15-for-1 forward stock split of our \$0.001 par value common stock. All shares and per share amounts have been retroactively restated to reflect such split. Prior to the acquisition of Alkaline Water Corp., the Company had 109,500,000 shares of common stock issued and outstanding. On May 31, 2013, the Company issued 43,000,000 shares in exchange for a 100% interest in Alkaline Water Corp. For accounting purposes, the acquisition of Alkaline Water Corp. by The Alkaline Water Company Inc. has been recorded as a reverse acquisition of a company and recapitalization of Alkaline Water Corp. based on the factors demonstrating that Alkaline Water Corp. represents the accounting acquirer. Consequently, after the closing of this agreement the Company adopted the business of Alkaline Water Corp. s wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline 88, LLC. As part of the acquisition, the former management of the Company agreed to cancel 75,000,000 shares of common stock.

On December 30, 2015, the Company affected a fifty for one reverse stock split of its authorized and issued and outstanding shares of common stock. As a result, the authorized common stock has decreased from 1,125,000,000 shares of common stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share, to 22,500,000 shares of common stock, with a par value of \$0.001 per share. All shares and per share amounts have been retroactively restated to reflect such split.

On January 21, 2016, stockholders of our company approved, by written consents, an amendment to the articles of incorporation of our company to increase the number of authorized shares of our common stock from 22,500,000 to 200,000,000.

The Company received written consents representing 20,776,000 votes from the holders of shares of its common stock and our Series A Preferred Stock voting as a single class, representing approximately 61% of the voting power of its outstanding common stock and its outstanding Series A Preferred Stock voting as a single class as of the record date (January 12, 2016). On January 21, 2016, there were no written consents received by the Company representing a vote against, abstention or broker non-vote with respect to the proposal.

#### Sale of restricted shares

During the period from May 7, 2015 through December 31, 2015, the Company sold units of our securities at a price of \$3.50 per unit. Each unit consists of one share of our common stock and one non-transferable common stock purchase warrant, with each common stock purchase warrant entitling the holder to acquire one additional share of our common stock at a price of \$5.00 per share for a period of two years. The Company sold 223,200 units during the period ended December 31, 2015 consisting of 223,200 shares of common stock and 223,200 warrants for gross proceeds of \$781,200.

The evaluated these transaction using ASC 480-10 Distinguishing liabilities from equity and ASC 505-10 Equity . The Company sold 223,200 units and issued 223,200 shares of common stock and issued 223,200 warrants. The warrants were valued using the Black-Scholes option pricing model with the following assumptions:

| Market value of stock on purchase date | \$<br>3.75 | to \$ | 7.10  |
|--|------------|-------|-------|
| Risk-free interest rate                | .26%       | to    | 1.42% |
| Dividend yield                         |            | 0.00% |       |
| Volatility factor                      | 116%       | to    | 161%  |
| Weighted average expected life (years) |            | 2     |       |

| Common stock   | \$<br>414,036 |
|----------------|---------------|
| Warrant        | 367,164       |
| Total proceeds | \$<br>781,200 |

The proceeds were allocated as follows:

On May 1, 2014, the Company completed the offering and sale of an aggregate of 346,667 shares of our common stock and warrants to purchase an aggregate of 173,333 shares of our common stock, for aggregate gross proceeds of

\$2,599,999. Each share of common stock the Company sold in the offering was accompanied by a warrant to purchase one-half of a share of common stock at an exercise price of \$7.50 per share for a period of five years from the date of issuance. Each share of common stock, together with each warrant was sold at a price of \$7.50.

Pursuant to the engagement agreement dated March 12, 2014 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (Wainwright), Wainwright agreed to act as our exclusive placement agent in connection with the offering. Pursuant to the engagement agreement, the Company paid Wainwright a cash placement fee equal to 8% of the aggregate gross proceeds from the offering, or \$208,000, and a non-accountable expense allowance equal to 1% of the aggregate gross proceeds from the offering, or \$26,000. In addition, the Company issued warrants to purchase an aggregate of 5.5% of the aggregate number of shares of our common stock sold in the offering, or 19,067, to Wainwright and its designees. These warrants have an exercise price of \$9.38 per share and expire on April 16, 2019.

On March 4, 2016, the Company completed the offering and sale of an aggregate of 9,000,000 shares of our common stock and warrants to purchase an aggregate of 4,500,000 shares of our common stock, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$2,970,000. Each share of common stock the Company sold in the offering was accompanied by one-half of a warrant to purchase one share of common stock at an exercise price of \$0.50 per share for a period of two years from the date of issuance. Each share of common stock and accompanying one-half of one warrant was sold at a price of \$0.33.

These securities have been registered under the Securities Act of 1933 pursuant to our registration statement on Form S-1, as amended (No. 333-209124), which was declared effective by the Securities and Exchange Commission on February 11, 2016.

Also on March 4, 2016, the Company used the proceeds of the Offering to repay loans in the aggregate principal amounts of \$1,500,000 In connection with the repayment of loans in the aggregate principal amounts of \$1,500,000 on March 4, 2016, 526,316 shares of our common stock issued to Neil Rogers and held in escrow and 1,500,000 shares of our common stock issued to Turnstone Capital Inc. and held in escrow were cancelled effective as of March 31, 2016.

In June 2016, the Company issued an aggregate of 425,000 shares of our common stock to three investors in a private placement, at a purchase price of \$1.00 per share for gross proceeds of \$425,000.

#### Common stock issued for services

On April 1, 2016, the Company issued 5,000 common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$1.65 per share.

On April 1, 201, the Company issued 12,500 common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$1.65 per share.

On June 1, 2016, the Company issued 65,000 common shares to consultant for services rendered that were valued at the market value on that date of \$1.75 per share.

#### NOTE 9 OPTIONS AND WARRANTS

#### Stock option awards

On January 29, 2016, the Company granted a total of 1,310,000 stock options to certain employees. The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$0.52 per share for a period of 7.6 years from the date of grant and vested upon the date of grant.

On January 29, 2016, the Company granted a total of 3,000,000 stock options Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (1,500,000 stock options to each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$0.52 per share for a period of 7.6 years from the date of grant and vested upon the date of grant.

On March 4, 2016, the Company completed the offering and sale of an aggregate of 9,000,000 shares of our common stock the offering included warrants to purchase an aggregate of 4,500,000 shares of our common stock, at an exercise price of \$0.50 per share for a period of two years from the date of issuance.

For the three months ended June 30, 2016 and June 30, 2015 the Company has recognized compensation expense of \$0 and \$12,912 respectively, on the stock options granted that vested. The fair value of the unvested shares is \$0 as of June 30, 2016. The aggregate intrinsic value of these options was \$0 at June 30, 2016. Stock option activity summary covering options is presented in the table below:

|                               | Number of<br>Shares | ,  | Weighted-<br>Average<br>Exercise<br>Price | Weighted-<br>Average<br>Remaining<br>Contractual<br>Term<br>(years) |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|----|---|---|
| Outstanding at March 31, 2015 | 343,400             | \$ | 7.00                                      | 8.2   |
| Granted                       | 4,310,000           | \$ | 0.52                                      | 7.8   |
| Exercised                     | -                   | \$ | -   | -   |
| Expired/Forfeited             | -                   | \$ | -   | -   |
| Outstanding at March 31, 2016 | 4,653,400           | \$ | 0.92                                      | 7.7   |
| Granted                       | -                   | \$ | -   | -   |
| Exercised                     | -                   | \$ | -   | -   |
| Expired/Forfeited             | -                   | \$ | -   | -   |
| Outstanding at June 30, 2016  | 4,653,400           | \$ | 0.92                                      | 7.3   |
| Exercisable at June 30, 2016  | 4,653,400           | \$ | 0.92                                      | 7.3   |

#### NOTE 10 RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

On October 31, 2014, the Company amended the 2013 Equity Incentive Plan to, among other things, to increase the number of shares of stock of the Company available for the grant of awards under the plan from 20,000,000 shares to 35,000,000 shares.

On October 31, 2014, the Company reduced the exercise price of an aggregate of 120,000 stock options granted to Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright, our directors and executive officers, to \$7.50 per share as noted below:

|                       | New Exercise      |                                 |    |                   |                 |                            |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|----|-------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Name of<br>Optionee   | <b>Grant Date</b> | Old Exercise<br>Price per Share |    | rice per<br>Share | Expiration Date | Number of Stock<br>Options |  |  |  |  |
| Steven P.<br>Nickolas | October 9, 2013   | \$ 30.25                        | \$ | 7.50              | October 9, 2023 | 60,000                     |  |  |  |  |
| Richard A.<br>Wright  | October 9, 2013   | \$ 30.25                        | \$ | 7.50              | October 9, 2023 | 60,000                     |  |  |  |  |

On May 21, 2014, the Company granted a total of 120,000 stock options Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (60,000 stock options to each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$7.275 per share for a period of ten years from the date of grant. 60,000 stock options vested upon the date of grant and 60,000 stock options will vest on November 21, 2014.

On October 9, 2013, the Company granted a total of 120,000 stock options to Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (60,000 stock options to each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$30.25 per share for a period of ten years from the date of grant. For each individual, the stock options vest as follows: (i) 20,000 upon the date of grant; and (ii) 10,000 per quarter until fully vested.

On October 8, 2013, the Company issued a total of 20,000,000 shares of non-convertible Series A Preferred Stock to Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (10,000,000 shares to each), our directors and executive officers, in consideration for the past services, at a deemed value of \$0.001 per share. We valued these shares based on the cost considering the time and average billing rate of these individuals and recorded a \$20,000 stock compensation cost for the year ended March 31, 2014.

On January 29, 2016, the Company granted a total of 3,000,000 stock options Steven A. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (1,500,000 stock options to each). The stock options are exercisable at the exercise price of \$0.52 per share for a period of 7.6 years from the date of grant and vested upon the date of grant.

Effective March 31, 2016, the Company issued a total of 3,000,000 shares of our Series C Preferred Stock to Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright (1,500,000 shares to each), our directors and executive officers, pursuant to their employment agreements dated effective March 1, 2016.

On April 2, 2014, the Company entered into a sale-leaseback transaction with Water Engineering Solutions LLC, an entity that is controlled and owned by an officer, director and shareholder, for specialized equipment with an original cost of \$208,773 and that was acquired in August 2013. The Company received proceeds of \$188,000 in April 2014. The lease terms are 60 monthly payments of \$3,812, payable 30 days after installation of the equipment and a purchase option of \$1.00. The Company recorded a loss on sales leaseback of \$20,773.

As of March 31, 2014, the Company had \$0 in equipment deposits with an entity that is controlled and owned by an officer, director and shareholder of the Company. During the year ended March 31, 2014, the Company provided \$201,900 of deposits on equipment used to produce our alkaline water to an entity that is controlled and owned by an officer, director and shareholder of the Company. During the month of March 2014, these funds were returned to the Company.

During the year ended March 31, 2014 the Company acquired equipment of \$208,773 and \$10,287 from an entity that is controlled and majority-owned by an officer, director and shareholder of the Company.

On January 17, 2014 the Company entered into an equipment lease with Water Engineering Solutions LLC, an entity that is controlled and owned by an officer, director and shareholder, for specialized equipment used to make our alkaline water totaling \$190,756 and agreed to a 60-month term at \$2,512 per month and a final payment of \$28,585. On February 12, 2014 the Company amended this lease, as noted above, with equipment deposits of \$201,900 being returned to the Company. In addition, the lease terms were amended to 60 monthly payments of \$3,864, payable 30 days after installation of the equipment and a purchase option of \$1.00.

On August 1, 2013, the Company entered into a 3-year sub-lease agreement requiring a monthly payment of \$2,085 for office space in Scottsdale, Arizona, with a basic monthly lease increase of 8% and 7% on each anniversary date. The Company or the landlord can cancel the lease with 30 days notice. The sub-lessor is an entity owned by the Company s Chief Executive Officer and President.

Under the terms of the exclusive manufacturing agreement entered into on April 15, 2013 between the Company and Water Engineering Solutions LLC, a related party, the Company paid \$690,000 on May 1 2014 for specialized equipment used in the production of our alkaline water. Under this agreement, the Company paid deposits on equipment as follows: May 1, 2014 \$690,000, June 27, 2014 \$21,500, July 1, 2014 \$115,000, August 7, 2014 \$10,000, August 5, 2014 \$5,000, August 19, 2014 \$2,000, August 22, 2014 \$100,000, October 14, 2014 \$70,000,

November 4, 2014 \$7,676 and November 7, 2014 \$5,002. The Company received equipment valued at \$278,769 and reduced the deposit on equipment. During the year ended March 31, 2016 the company made purchased equipment of \$312,500 to Water Engineering Solutions. Water Engineering Solutions, LLC is an entity that is controlled and majority owned by Steven P. Nickolas and Richard A. Wright for the production of our alkaline water.

#### NOTE 11 INCOME TAXES

The Company accounts for income taxes under ASC 740-10, which provides for an asset and liability approach of accounting for income taxes. Under this approach, deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized based on antic The Company accounts for income taxes under ASC 740-10, which provides for an asset and liability approach of accounting for income taxes. Under this approach, deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized based on anticipated future tax consequences, using currently enacted tax laws, attributed to temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the amounts calculated for income tax purposes.

For the years ended March 31, 2016 and 2015, the Company incurred net operating losses and, accordingly, no provision for income taxes has been recorded. In addition, no benefit for income taxes has been recorded due to the uncertainty of the realization of any deferred tax assets.

Based on the available objective evidence, including the Company s history of losses, management believes it is more likely than not that any net deferred tax assets will not be fully realizable. Accordingly, the Company provided for a full valuation allowance against its net deferred tax assets at June 30, 2016 and March 31, 2016, respectively.

In accordance with ASC 740, the Company has evaluated its tax positions and determined that there are no uncertain tax positions.

## NOTE 12 CAPITAL LEASE

On January 17, 2014, the Company entered into an equipment lease with Water Engineering Solutions LLC, an entity that is controlled and owned by an officer, director and shareholder, for specialized equipment used to make our alkaline water with a stated value of \$190,756 and agreed to a 60 month term at \$3,864 per month and a purchase option of \$1 which commenced on May 1, 2014.

On April 2, 2014, the Company entered into a capital lease agreement with Water Engineering Solutions LLC, an entity that is controlled and owned by an officer, director and shareholder, for specialized equipment used to make our alkaline water with a stated value of \$188,000, terms of 60 monthly payments of \$3,812, payable 30 days after installation of the equipment and a purchase option of \$1.00 which commenced on July 1, 2014.

On October 22, 2014 the Company agreed to purchase the specialized equipment use to make our alkaline water that were previously reflected as capital lease on January 17, 2014 and April 2, 2014. During the quarter ended December 31, 2014, the Company purchased these capital leases of specialized equipment for \$347,161, the lease liability on the date of purchase.

On October 22, 2014, the Company entered into a master lease agreement with Veterans Capital Fund, LLC (the Lessor ) for the secured lease line of credit financing in an amount not to exceed \$600,000. The lease is expected to be secured by three new alkaline generating electrolysis system machines. Our wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline 88, LLC, and Water Engineering Solutions, LLC acted as co-lessees. Water Engineering Solutions, LLC is an entity that is controlled and owned by our President, Chief Executive Officer, director and major stockholder, Steven P. Nickolas, and our Vice-President, Secretary, Treasurer and director, Richard A. Wright. Pursuant to the master lease agreement, the Lessor agreed to lease to us the equipment described in any equipment schedule signed by us and approved by the Lessor. It is expected that any lease under the master lease agreement will be structured for a three year lease term with fixed monthly lease rental payments based on a monthly lease rate factor of 3.4667% of the Lessor s capital cost. In connection with the entering into the master lease agreement, the Company also entered into a warrant agreement with the Lessor, pursuant to which the Company agreed to issue a warrant to purchase 72,000 shares of our common stock to the Lessor and/or its affiliates at an exercise price of \$6. 25 per share for a period of five years, 18,000 shares vested.

On February 25, 2015, the Company amended the master lease agreement with Veterans Capital Fund, LLC for the increase in the secured lease line of credit financing to an amount not to exceed \$800,000. The lease was secured by new alkaline generating electrolysis system machines by our wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline 88, LLC, and Water Engineering Solutions, LLC. Water Engineering Solutions, LLC is an entity that is controlled and owned by our President, Chief Executive Officer, director and major stockholder, Steven P. Nickolas, and our Vice-President, Secretary, Treasurer and director, Richard A. Wright. Pursuant to the master lease agreement, the Lessor agreed to lease to us the equipment described in any equipment schedule signed by us and approved by the Lessor. It is expected that any lease under the master lease agreement will be structured for a three year lease term with fixed monthly lease rental payments based on a monthly lease rate factor of 3.4667% of the Lessor s capital cost. In connection with the entering into the master lease agreement, the Company entered into a warrant agreement with the Lessor, pursuant to which the Company agreed to cancel the previous issued warrant for 72,000 and issue a warrant to purchase 102,000 shares of our common stock to the Lessor and/or its affiliates at an exercise price of \$5.00 per share for a period of five years. 18,000 shares vested on October 22, 2014, 13,316 shares on October 28, 2014, 13,606 shares on December 22, 2014, 6,945 shares on February 3, 2015 and 15,799 shares on March 5, 2015. The remaining 18,105 shares will vest on a pro rata basis according to any mounts the Lessor funds pursuant to any lease schedules under the master lease agreement, provided that if the Company draws on 90% or more of the total lease line under the master lease agreement, then all such shares will be deemed to be vested. The Company recorded the bifurcated value of \$309,028 of the warrants issued as additional paid in capital, the value was determine using a Black-Scholes, a level 3 valuation measure.

During the year ended March 31, 2015 the Company agreed to lease the specialized equipment used to make our alkaline water with a value of \$735,781 under the above Master Lease agreement. The Company evaluated this lease under ASC 840-30 Leases- Capital Leases and concluded that these lease where a capital asset.

#### NOTE 13 NOTES PAYABLE

On August 19, 2015, the Company entered into a securities purchase agreement pursuant to which the Company issued a secured term note of our company in the aggregate principal amount of \$240,000, together with 20,000 shares of our common stock, in consideration for \$200,000. The secured term note bears requires monthly payments of \$20,000 per month, along with a final payment due on August 20, 2016.

On November 2, 2015 the Company issued a promissory note to a lender in the amount of \$125,000. The note requires weekly payments of \$2,450.98 plus interest. The final payment is due on November 19, 2016.

Between June 10, 2016 and June 20, 2016, the Company entered into loan agreements with various lenders pursuant to which the Company issued convertible promissory notes of our company in the aggregate principal amount of \$260,000, The convertible promissory note bears interest at the rate of 10% per annum and matures on June 10, 2017 and is convertible into common shares at \$1.00 per share. The Company evaluated this transaction under ASC 470-20-30 *Debt liability and equity component* determine that a Debt Discount of \$240,100 was provided and will be amortized over the 1-year term of the note. As of June 30, 2016, the unamortized debt discount was \$220,092.

## NOTE 14 SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

On July 26, 2016, the Company issues 25,600 of our common stock in connection with a cash-less exercise of a warrant.

# Item 2. Management s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations.

## **Forward-Looking Statements**

This report contains forward-looking statements . All statements other than statements of historical fact are forward-looking statements for purposes of federal and state securities laws, including, but not limited to, any projections of earnings, revenue or other financial items; any statements of the plans, strategies and objections of management for future operations; any statements concerning proposed new services or developments; any statements regarding future economic conditions or performance; any statements or belief; and any statements of assumptions underlying any of the foregoing.

Forward-looking statements may include the words may, could, estimate, intend, continue, believe, anticipate or other similar words. These forward-looking statements present our estimates and assumptions only as of the date of this report. Accordingly, readers are cautioned not to place undue reliance on forward-looking statements, which speak only as of the dates on which they are made. Except as required by applicable law, including the securities laws of the United States, we do not intend, and undertake no obligation, to update any forward-looking statement.

Although we believe the expectations reflected in any of our forward-looking statements are reasonable, actual results could differ materially from those projected or assumed in any of our forward-looking statements. Our future financial condition and results of operations, as well as any forward-looking statements, are subject to change and inherent risks and uncertainties. The factors impacting these risks and uncertainties include, but are not limited to:

- our current lack of working capital;
- inability to raise additional financing;
- the fact that our accounting policies and methods are fundamental to how we report our financial condition and results of operations, and they may require our management to make estimates about matters that are inherently uncertain;
- deterioration in general or regional economic conditions;
- adverse state or federal legislation or regulation that increases the costs of compliance, or adverse findings by a regulator with respect to existing operations;
- inability to efficiently manage our operations;
- inability to achieve future sales levels or other operating results; and
- the unavailability of funds for capital expenditures.

As used in this quarterly report on Form 10-Q, the terms we, us our, the Company and Alkaline refer to The A Water Company Inc., a Nevada corporation, and its wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline Water Corp., and Alkaline Water Corp. s wholly-owned subsidiary, Alkaline 88, LLC, unless otherwise specified.

# **Results of Operations**

Our results of operations for the three months ended June 30, 2016 and June 30, 2015 are as follows:

|  | $\mathbf{F}$                   | <u>or the three</u> | I               | <u>For the three</u> |
|--|--------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
|  | <u>m</u>                       | onths ended         | <u>n</u>        | nonths ended         |
|  | <u>June 30.</u> <u>June 30</u> |                     | <u>June 30,</u> |                      |
|  |                                | <u>2016</u>         |                 | <u>2015</u>          |
| Revenue  | \$                             | 2,946,749           | \$              | 1,513,578            |
| Cost of goods sold                                     |                                | 1,790,713           |                 | 976,804              |
| Gross profit   |                                | 1,156,036           |                 | 536,774              |
| Net Loss (after operating expenses and other expenses) | \$                             | (1,013,631)         | \$              | (1,554,630))         |

## Revenue and Cost of Goods Sold

We had revenue from sales of our product for the three months ended June 30, 2016 of \$2,946,749, as compared to \$1,513,578 for the three months ended June 30, 2015, an increase of 95% generated by sales of our alkaline water. The increase in sales is due to the expanded distribution of our products to additional retailers throughout the country. As of June 30, 2016, the product is now available in all 50 states at an estimated 25,000 retail locations. As of June 30, 2015, the product was available in all 50 states at an estimated 17,500 retail locations. This increase has occurred primarily through the addition of 36 of the top national grocery retailers as customer during the year ended March 31, 2016. We distribute our product through several channels. We sell through large national distributors (UNFI, KeHe, Tree of Life, C&S, Core-Mark and Nature s Best), which together represent over 150,000 retail outlets. We also sell our product directly to retail clients, including convenience stores, natural food products stores, large ethnic markets and national retailers. Some examples of retail clients are, Albertson s, Safeway, Kroger, Schnucks, Smart & Final, Jewel-Osco, Sprouts, Bashas , Stater Bros. Markets, Unified Grocers, Bristol Farms, Vallarta, Superior Foods, Ingles, HEB and Brookshire s.

Cost of goods sold is comprised of production costs, shipping and handling costs. For the three months ended June 30, 2016, we had cost of goods sold of \$1,790,713, or 60.8% of revenue, as compared to cost of goods sold of \$976,804 or 64.5% of revenue, for the three months ended June 30, 2015. The increase in gross profit rate is a result of reduced raw material cost through greater volume purchases from our suppliers.

#### Expenses

Our operating expenses for the three months ended June 30, 2016 and June 30, 2015 are as follows:

|                                     | For the three months ended |                 | For the three months ended |                 |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
|                                     |                            | <u>June 30,</u> |                            | <u>June 30,</u> |
|                                     |                            | <u> 2016</u>    |                            | <u>2015</u>     |
| Sales and marketing expenses        | \$                         | 1,085,999       | \$                         | 626,681         |
| General and administrative expenses |                            | 840,774         |                            | 1,151,540       |
| Depreciation expenses               |                            | 89,439          |                            | 71,029          |
| Total operating expenses            | \$                         | 2,016,212       | \$                         | 1,849,250       |

During the for the three months ended June 30, 2016, our total operating expenses were \$2,016,212, as compared to \$1,849,250 for the three months ended June 30, 2015.

For the three months ended June 30, 2016, the total included \$1,085,999 of sales and marketing expenses and \$840,774 of general and administrative expenses, consisting primarily of approximately \$142,625 of shares stock option compensation expense, and \$279,763 of professional fees. Our stock and stock option compensation expense was incurred as a part of our issuance of certain stock options and stock grants to employees and key consultants to develop our business. Although a non-cash expense, the value of such issuances had a material impact on our general and administrative expenses for the three months ended June 30, 2016.

For the three months ended June 30, 2015 the total included \$626,681 of sales and marketing expenses and \$1,151,540 of general and administrative expenses, consisting primarily of approximately \$642,872 of shares stock option compensation expense, and \$103,540 of professional fees. Our stock and stock option compensation expense was incurred as a part of our issuance of certain stock options and stock grants to employees and key consultants to develop our business. Although a non-cash expense, the value of such issuances had a material impact on our general and administrative expenses for the three months ended June 30, 2015.

## **Liquidity and Capital Resources**

#### Working Capital

|                              | <u>Ju</u> | ne 30, 2016 | Ma | arch 31, 2016 |
|------------------------------|-----------|-------------|----|---------------|
| Current assets               | \$        | 1,895,471   | \$ | 2,549,023     |
| Current liabilities          |           | 1,774,700   |    | 2,153,472     |
| Working capital (deficiency) | \$        | 120,771     | \$ | 395,551       |

Current Assets

Current assets as of June 30, 2016 and March 31, 2016 primarily relate to \$437,720 and \$1,192,119 in cash, \$937,951 and \$911,390 in accounts receivable and \$509,200 and \$434,708 in inventory, respectively.

#### Current Liabilities

Current liabilities as of June 30, 2016 and March 31, 2016 primarily relate to \$599,639 and \$847,452 in accounts payable, revolving financing of \$545,805 and \$475,273, note payable of \$81,454 and \$324,368, current portion of capital leases of \$253,399 and \$243,623 and accrued expenses of \$287,566 and \$251,613 respectively.

#### Cash Flow

Our cash flows for the three months ended June 30, 2016 and June 30, 2015 are as follows:

|   | <u>F</u> | <u>or the three</u> | For the three    |
|---|----------|---------------------|------------------|
|   |          | months              | <b>months</b>    |
|   |          | <u>ended</u>        | <u>ended</u>     |
|   |          | <u>June 30,</u>     | <u>June 30, </u> |
|   |          | <u>2016</u>         | <u>2015</u>      |
| Net Cash used in operating activities     | \$       | (993,779)           | \$ (566,977)     |
| Net Cash used in investing activities     |          | (116,929)           | (27,848)         |
| Net Cash provided by financing activities |          | 356,309             | 698,667          |
| Net increase in cash and cash equivalents | \$       | (754,399)           | \$ 103,842       |
| Operating Activities                      |          |                     |                  |

Net cash used in operating activities was \$993,779 for the three months ended June 30, 2016, as compared to \$566,977 used in operating activities for the three months ended June 30, 2015. The increase in net cash used in operating activities was primarily due to reduction of accounts payable in the quarter ended June 30, 2016 compared to an increase of accounts payable in the quarter ended June 30, 2015.

#### **Investing Activities**

Net cash used in investing activities was \$116,929 for the three months ended June 30, 2016, as compared to \$27,848 used in investing activities for the three months ended June 30, 2015. The increase in net cash used by investing activities was the result of an increase of purchase of fixed assets and equipment deposits.

#### Financing Activities

Net cash provided by financing activities for the three months ended June 30, 2016 was \$356,309, as compared to \$698,667 for the three months ended June 30, 2015. The decrease of net cash provided by financing activities was mainly attributable to repayment of notes payable.

# **Cash Requirements**

We believe that cash flow from operations will not meet our present and near-term cash needs and thus we will require additional cash resources, including the sale of equity or debt securities, to meet our planned capital expenditures and working capital requirements for the next 12 months. We estimate that our capital needs over the next 12 months will be up to \$3,000,000. We will require additional cash resources to, among other things, expand broker network, increase manufacturing capacity, expand retail distribution and add support staff. If our own financial resources and future cash-flows from operations are insufficient to satisfy our capital requirements, we may seek to sell additional equity or debt securities or obtain additional credit facilities. The sale of additional equity securities will result in dilution to our stockholders. The incurrence of indebtedness will result in increased debt service obligations and could require us to agree to operating and financial covenants that could restrict our operations or modify our plans to grow the business. Financing may not be available in amounts or on terms acceptable to us, if at all. Any failure by us to raise additional funds on terms favorable to us, or at all, will limit our ability to expand our business operations and could harm our overall business prospects.

# **Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

We have no off-balance sheet arrangements that have or are reasonably likely to have a current or future effect on our financial condition, changes in financial condition, revenues or expenses, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures or capital resources that is material to our stockholders.

## Item 3. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk.

Not applicable.

#### Item 4. Controls and Procedures.

#### **Disclosure Controls and Procedures**

We maintain "disclosure controls and procedures", as that term is defined in Rule 13a-15(e), promulgated by the Securities and Exchange Commission pursuant to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Disclosure controls and procedures include controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in our company's reports filed under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the Securities and Exchange Commission's rules and forms, and that such information is accumulated and communicated to our management, including our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure.

As required by paragraph (b) of Rules 13a-15 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, our management, with the participation of our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer, evaluated our company's disclosure controls and procedures as of the end of the period covered by this quarterly report on Form 10-Q. Based on this evaluation, our management concluded that as of the end of the period covered by this quarterly report on Form 10-Q, our disclosure controls and procedures were effective.

## **Changes in Internal Control Over Financial Reporting**

There were no changes in our internal control over financial reporting during the fiscal quarter ended June 30, 2016 that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect our internal control over financial reporting.

## PART II OTHER INFORMATION

#### Item 1. Legal Proceedings.

We are not a party to any material legal proceedings.

#### Item 1A. Risk Factors.

Information regarding risk factors appears in our Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on July 14, 2016. There have been no material changes since July 14, 2016 from the risk factors disclosed in that Form 10-K.

# Item 2. Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities and Use of Proceeds.

On July 20, 2016, we issued 25,600 shares of our common stock at a price of \$0.33 per share to a warrant holder upon full exercise of the warrant to purchase an aggregate of 32,000 shares of our common stock on a cashless basis. In issuing these shares, we relied on an exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities Act of 1933 provided by Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933.

## Item 3. Defaults Upon Senior Securities.

None.

# Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures.

Not applicable.

## Item 5. Other Information.

None.

#### Item 6. Exhibits.

Exhibit

3.3

Number Description

August 13, 2013)

| <b>(1)</b> | Underwriting Agreement  |
|------------|---|
| 1.1        | Engagement Agreement dated October 7, 2013 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-1, filed on November 27, 2013)                          |
| 1.2        | Amendment Agreement to Engagement Agreement dated November 1, 2013 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-1/A, filed on January 9, 2014)  |
| 1.3        | Amendment Agreement to Engagement Agreement dated November 25, 2013 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-1, filed on November 27, 2013) |
| 1.4        | Termination Agreement for Engagement Agreement dated March 12, 2014 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-1, filed on March 12, 2014)    |
| 1.5        | Engagement Agreement dated March 12, 2014 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-1, filed on March 12, 2014)                              |
| <b>(2)</b> | Plan of Acquisition, Reorganization, Arrangement, Liquidation or Succession   |
| 2.1        | Share Exchange Agreement dated May 31, 2013 with Alkaline Water Corp. and its shareholders (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on June 5, 2013)                       |
| (3)        | Articles of Incorporation and Bylaws  |
| 3.1        | Articles of Incorporation (incorporated by reference from our Form S-1 Registration Statement, filed on October 28, 2011)   |
| 3.2        | Certificate of Change (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on   |

Articles of Merger (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on August 13, 2013)

- 3.4 Certificate of Amendment (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on October 11, 2013)
- 3.5 Certificate of Designation (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on October 11, 2013)
- 3.6 Certificate of Designation (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on November 12, 2013)
- 3.7 Certificate of Change (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on December 30, 2015)
- 3.8 Certificate of Amendment to Articles of Incorporation (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 25, 2016)
- 3.9 Certificate of Amendment to Certificate of Designation (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 25, 2016)
- 3.10 Certificate of Designation (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on April 5, 2016)
- 3.11 Amended and Restated Bylaws (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on March 15, 2013)

## (10) Material Contracts

- 10.1 Contract Packer Agreement dated November 14, 2012 between Alkaline 84, LLC and AZ Bottled Water, LLC (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on June 5, 2013)
- 10.2 Stock Option Agreement dated October 9, 2013 with Steven P. Nickolas (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on November 13, 2013)
- 10.3 Stock Option Agreement dated October 9, 2013 with Richard A. Wright (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on November 13, 2013)
- 10.4 Contract Packer Agreement dated October 7, 2013 with White Water, LLC (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on November 13, 2013)
- Manufacturing Agreement dated August 15, 2013 with Water Engineering Solutions, LLC (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-1, filed on November 27, 2013)
- Equipment Lease Agreement dated January 17, 2014 (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 27, 2014)
- 10.7 Revolving Accounts Receivable Funding Agreement dated February 20, 2014 (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on February 25, 2014)
- 10.8 Form of Securities Purchase Agreement dated as of April 28, 2014, between The Alkaline Water Company Inc. and the purchasers named therein (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 6, 2014)
- 10.9 Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 6, 2014)
- 10.10 Form of Placement Agent Common Stock Purchase Warrant (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 6, 2014)
- 10.11 Stock Option Agreement dated May 12, 2014 with Steven P. Nickolas (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 14, 2014)
- 10.12 Stock Option Agreement dated May 12, 2014 with Richard A. Wright (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 14, 2014)
- 10.13 Stock Option Agreement dated May 21, 2014 with Steven P. Nickolas (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 23, 2014)
- 10.14 Stock Option Agreement dated May 21, 2014 with Richard A. Wright (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on May 23, 2014)
- 10.15 Amendment #1 dated February 12, 2014 to Equipment Lease Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on August 13, 2014)
- 10.16 Equipment Sale/Lease Back Agreement dated April 2, 2014 (incorporated by reference from our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q, filed on August 13, 2014)

- 10.17 Agreement dated August 12, 2014 with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on August 21, 2014)
- 10.18 Form of Warrant Amendment Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on August 21, 2014)
- 10.19 Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on August 21, 2014)

28

| 10.20 | Form of Warrant Amendment Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on October 9, 2014)   |
|-------|---|
| 10.21 | Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on October 9, 2014)   |
| 10.22 | Master Lease Agreement dated October 28, 2014 with Veterans Capital Fund, LLC (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on November 4, 2014)            |
| 10.23 | Warrant Agreement dated October 28, 2014 with Veterans Capital Fund, LLC (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on November 4, 2014)                 |
| 10.24 | Registration Rights Agreement dated October 28, 2014 with Veterans Capital Fund, LLC (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on November 4, 2014)     |
| 10.25 | 2013 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on November 4, 2014)   |
| 10.26 | Form of Amending Agreement to Stock Option Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on November 4, 2014)                                     |
| 10.27 | Stock Option Agreement dated February 18, 2016 with Steven P. Nickolas (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on April 14, 2016)                     |
| 10.28 | Stock Option Agreement dated February 18, 2016 with Richard A. Wright (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on April 14, 2016)                      |
| 10.29 | Securities Purchase Agreement dated as of May 11, 2015 with Assurance Funding Solutions LLC (incorporated by reference from our Annual Report on Form 10-K, filed on July 14, 2015) |
| 10.30 | Secured Term Note dated May 2015 issued to Assurance Funding Solutions LLC (incorporated by reference from our Annual Report on Form 10-K, filed on July 14, 2015)                  |
| 10.31 | General Security Agreement dated as of May 11, 2015 with Assurance Funding Solutions LLC (incorporated by reference from our Annual Report on Form 10-K, filed on July 14, 2015)    |
| 10.32 | Securities Purchase Agreement dated as of August 20, 2015 with Assurance Funding Solutions LLC  |
| 10.33 | Secured Term Note dated August 20, 2015 issued to Assurance Funding Solutions LLC   |
| 10.34 | General Security Agreement dated as of August 20, 2015 with Assurance Funding Solutions LLC   |
| 10.35 | Form of Warrant Exchange Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8- K, filed on December 1, 2015)  |
| 10.36 | Loan Agreement dated November 30, 2015 with Neil Rogers (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on December 4, 2015)                                  |
| 10.37 | Promissory Note dated November 30, 2015 issued to Neil Rogers (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on December 4, 2015)                            |
| 10.38 | Escrow Agreement dated November 30, 2015 with Neil Rogers and Escrow Agent (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on December 4, 2015)               |
| 10.39 | 2013 Equity Incentive Plan (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 25, 2016)   |
| 10.40 | Loan Agreement dated January 25, 2016 with Turnstone Capital Inc. (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 25, 2016)                        |
| 10.41 | Promissory Note dated January 25, 2016 issued to Turnstone Capital Inc. (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 25, 2016)                  |
| 10.42 | Escrow Agreement dated January 25, 2016 with Turnstone Capital Inc. and Escrow Agent (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 25, 2016)     |
| 10.43 | Amendment Agreement dated January 25, 2016 with Neil Rogers (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on January 25, 2016)                              |
| 10.44 | Stock Option Agreement dated January 29, 2016 with Steven P. Nickolas (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on February 4, 2016)                    |
| 10.45 | Stock Option Agreement dated January 29, 2016 with Richard A. Wright (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on February 4, 2016)                     |
| 10.46 |   |

|       | Form of Subscription Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S-   |
|-------|--|
|       | 1/A, filed on February 8, 2016)  |
| 10.47 | Form of Warrant Certificate (incorporated by reference from our Registration Statement on Form S- 1/A, |
|       | filed on February 8, 2016)   |
| 10.48 | Employment Agreement dated effective March 1, 2016 with Steven P. Nickolas (incorporated by            |
|       | reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on April 5, 2016)                                 |
|       | 29   |
|       |  |

| 10.49       | Employment Agreement dated effective March 1, 2016 with Richard A. Wright (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on April 5, 2016) |
|-------------|---|
| 10.50       | Form of Promissory Note and Warrant Exchange Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8-K, filed on June 16, 2016)                    |
| 10.51       | Form of Warrant Exchange Agreement (incorporated by reference from our Current Report on Form 8- K, filed on June 16, 2016)                                       |
| (31)        | Rule 13a-14 Certifications  |
| 31.1*       | Certification of Principal Executive Officer Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002  |
| 31.2*       | Certification of Principal Financial Officer Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002  |
| (32)        | Section 1350 Certifications   |
| 32.1*       | Certification of Principal Executive Officer Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002  |
| 32.2*       | Certification of Principal Financial Officer Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002  |
| (101)       | Interactive Data File   |
| 101.INS*    | XBRL Instance Document  |
| 101.SCH*    | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema  |
| 101.CAL*    | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase  |
| 101.DEF*    | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase   |
| 101.LAB*    | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase  |
| 101.PRE*    | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase   |
| *Filed here | ewith.  |

## **SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

## THE ALKALINE WATER COMPANY INC.

Date: August 15, 2016 By: /s/ Steven P. Nickolas

Steven P. Nickolas

President, Chief Executive Officer and Director

(Principal Executive Officer)

Date: August 15, 2016 By: /s/ Richard A. Wright

Richard A. Wright

Vice-President, Secretary, Treasurer and Director (Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting

Officer)

31